

Government.
Their Discipline.

As to what concerns Discipline, the Soldiers are regularly exercised by their Officers. This Exercise consists either in a Kind of tumultuous and disorderly March, which they perform when they attend the *Mandarins*; or else in forming Squadrons, filing-off in Order, encountering each other, or in rallying at the Sound of Horns and Trumpets: In a Word, they draw the Bow, and handle the Sabre, with a great deal of Skill. They also from Time to Time review their Troops, examining carefully their Horses, Muskets, Sabres, Arrows, Cuirasses, and Helmets. If there be the least Rust on their Arms, they are punished on the Spot, for their Negligence, with thirty or forty Blows of a Batoon, if they are *Chinese*; or so many Lashes of a Whip, if *Tartars*; unless when employed on such Occasions, or some particular Duty, they are at Liberty to follow what Business they please ^a.

No Pressing.

In *China* there is no Necessity either for Pressing, or giving Advance-Money, to induce Men to enlist in the Army, as is practised in *Europe*: For there the Profession of a Soldier is commonly looked-upon as a good Settlement; which makes People fond to procure it ^b, by Means of their Friends, or Presents to the *Mandarins*; the Service being generally in the Country where they dwell.

THE three Northern-Provinces furnish Abundance of Soldiers, who every three Months receive their Pay, being five Sous of fine Silver ^c, and a Measure of Rice a Day, which is sufficient to maintain one Man. Some have double Pay, and Horsemen have five Sous more, with two Measures of small Beans to feed their Horses, which also are provided by the Emperor.

Army, how employed.

THESE Troops are scarce ever employed, especially since *Tartary* has submitted, for any Thing else, but to prevent Revolts, or to quell Commotions on their first Appearance in a City, or Province ^d. Their chief Business is to purge the Highways of Robbers, whom they follow and observe so carefully, that they seldom escape. On these Occasions, Orders are sent to the City; and if there be a Necessity for it, the Forces of several Cities, nearest to the Place infested by Robbers, are employed. In War-time, several Battalions are detached from every Province, to form an Army.

Troops along the Wall.

BEFORE the Union of the *Tartars* and *Chinese*, a prodigious Number of Troops ^e were

ranged along the great Wall, in order to guard it, and cover the Empire against the Attempts of such formidable Enemies: But at present only the most important Places are garrisoned.

THE Gate of Arms, in Cities, is only for the Use of Soldiers, who seldom are in their military Accoutrements, but when on Duty; as in Time of War, when they keep Guard, when they pass in Review, or when they attend the *Mandarins*. At other Times they apply themselves to Traffic, or follow their own private Professions ^f.

TWENTY-FOUR *Tartar* Officers have at Court the Dignity of Captain-Generals, and there are likewise many Colonels. Besides these Officers, who were established by the *Tartars*, there are also Officers of the *Ping-pu*, or Tribunal of War, who superintend the *Chinese* Troops throughout the Empire; and have always Couriers ready to carry necessary Orders into the Provinces, which is performed with great Secrecy ^g.

ALL the *Tartar* Families live in, or about *Peking*, and are not permitted to remove from thence without the Emperor's special Order. Hence it is, that the *Tartar* Troops, which compose the Emperor's Life-Guard, are always in a Manner near his Person. Here are also found some *Chinese* Troops, who formerly lifted themselves under the *Tartar* Banners, and were for that Reason called the *Tartarized Chinese*: They are very well paid, and always ready to follow on the first Order, to suppress Commotions, with surprizing Secrecy and Expedition.

THESE Troops are divided into eight Bodies, each of which has a Banner, distinguished either by the Colour, viz. yellow, white, red, and blue: Green is the Colour belonging to the Troops that are entirely *Chinese*, which are thence called *Lu-ki*, or the Soldiers of the green Banner.

EVERY *Tartar* Banner has its General, named, in the *Manchew* Language, *Kusanta*; who has under him certain great Officers, called *Mey-reynchain*, who are like our Lieutenant-Generals, and have under them several other Officers subordinate to each other.

As each Body, at present, is composed of *Manchew Tartars*, *Mongul Tartars*, and *Tartarized Chinese*, the General has under him two General Officers of each Nation, and these Officers have likewise Subalterns of the same Nation. Each Body consists of ten thousand effective Men, divided into an hundred *Nuru's*, or

^a Le Comte's Memoirs of China, p. 313. Du Halde's China, p. 261. ^b Hence it is, that, as Trigautius observes, half the People of the three Northern-Provinces are enrolled in the Service of the Emperor. ^c About Two-pence Farthing English. ^d Du Halde, as before, p. 261. ^e Le Comte says, a Million: Navarrete confirms the same on his own Knowledge, p. 24. ^f Magalbaens's Relation of China, p. 44, and 58. ^g Le Comte, as before, p. 290. And Du Halde, as before, p. 261, and 264. ^h Du Halde, as before, p. 261.

Government. Companies of an hundred Soldiers each^a: So that if we reckon the Emperor's Household, and those of the Princes, who have their Servants, with the Pay of the Officers and Soldiers, the common Opinion may be readily allowed to be true, viz. that there are always an hundred thousand Horse^b at *Pe-king*^c: Yet for the Reasons before-mentioned, they are so enervated, that the Western *Tartars* do not value their Numbers a Rush, and frequently say in Derision of them, that the Neighing of a *Tartary* Horse is enough to rout all the *Chinese* Cavalry.

BESIDES these standing Forces, there are fifteen or twenty thousand Men in each Province, under the Command of private Officers: They have also Troops to keep their Islands, especially *Hay-nan*, and *Formosa*.

Arms and Artillery.

THE Soldiers are all armed, according to the Custom of the Country, with Simeters and Darts. They have but a very small Infantry; among whom, there are no Pikemen, and very few Mulqueteers^d.

ARTILLERY is but a modern Invention among the *Chinese*^e; and though that of Gun-Powder is very ancient, they have seldom made-use of it, but for Fireworks, wherein they excel. There are, however, three or four Bombards, short and thick, at the Gates of *Nan-king*, old enough to prove, that they have had some Knowledge of Cannon, though they seemed to be ignorant of their Use; for they serve for nothing but to be shewn as Curiosities. They had also a few Patteraroes on-board their Vessels, but had not Skill enough to shoot with them.

European Cannon admired.

IN the Year 1621, the City of *Ma-kau* having presented the Emperor with three Cannon, and Men to manage them^f; which being tried before the *Mandarins*, they were greatly surprized at the Novelty. These Guns so terrified the *Tartars*, who came in Swarms towards the great Wall, by the Havock they made among them, that they fled, and durst never approach it, till 1636; when having made a new Irruption into the Empire, the military *Mandarins*, in order to stop their Inroads, talked of fortifying the Towns, and furnishing them with Artillery. On this Occasion, remembering that they had often heard Dr. *Paul Syu*^g say, that the Missionaries understood the Art of founding Cannon, they immediately besought the Emperor to command *Adam Schaal*, then President of the Tribunal of Mathematics, to cast some.

The Jesuits cast some.

HAVING obtained what they desired, they

made the Jesuit *Mandarin* a Visit, and in Discourse asked him, as it were by Chance, if he understood the Method of casting Cannon: *Schaal* replying, that he understood the Principles, they immediately presented him the Emperor's Order. The Missionary thus over-reached, would fain have excused himself, by alledging, that the Practice was quite different from the Theory: But obey he must, and instruct the Workmen, assisted however by the Eunuchs of the Court. Afterwards being persuaded by the Mathematical Works and Instruments made by *Verbieft* at *Pe-king*, that he must be equally skilled in founding Artillery, they obtained another Order from the Emperor, to that Jesuit; who finding by the Register of the Church at *Pe-king*, that a great Number of Missionaries had been brought into the Empire by the same Means, under the last Family of the *Chinese* Monarchs; and believing that such a Piece of Service done for the Emperor, would induce him to favour the *Romish* Religion, he cast one hundred and thirty Pieces of Cannon with wonderful Success.

Officers Military.

SOME Time after, the Council of the chief *Mandarins* of War, having presented a Memorial to the Emperor, whereby they required three hundred and twenty Pieces of Cannon, of different Bores, after the *European* Fashion, for the Defence of the fortified Places, his Majesty ordered, that *Nan-whay-jin* (for so the *Chinese* called *Verbieft*) should oversee the Work, and that it should be performed agreeable to the Patterns, which were to be painted, and presented him in a Memorial. Accordingly the eleventh of February 1681, that Missioner presented the Patterns, which were approved of; and an Order was sent to the *Kong-pu*, or Tribunal of public Works^h, to furnish all Things necessary for the Purpose, without Delay.

IT took-up above a Year to make these Cannon, in which Time the Jesuit met with many Obstructions from the Eunuchs of the Palace, who impatient to see a Stranger so much in Favour with the Emperor, used their utmost Endeavours to defeat the Undertaking: They complained every Moment of the Slowness of the Workmen, while they caused the Metal to be stolen-away by the under Officers of the Court. As soon as one of the largest Guns was cast, before it could be polished on the Inside, they forced an Iron-Bullet into the Mouth of it, thinking thereby to render it useless: But *Verbieft* ha-

Are a Year in making.

^a As *Jenghiz Khan* is remarked to have established the same Sort of Order among his Troops, it would be worth Enquiry, whether he took it from, or communicated it to the Eastern *Tartars*. ^b *Le Comte* says, one hundred and sixty thousand. ^c *Du Halde's China*, p. 69, & seq. ^d *Le Comte's Memoirs of China*, p. 290, and 312. ^e It appears from *Marco Polo*, that the *Tartars* employed Cannon at the Siege of *Pe-king*, in the thirteenth Century. ^f See before, p. 230. d. ^g A converted *Mandarin*. See before, p. 230. c. ^h Described before, p. 264. ving

Natural History.

ving charged it through the Touch-Hole, it was a fired-out with such a terrible Noise, that the Emperor hearing it in the Palace, would needs see it repeated. When all the Cannon were finished, they were taken to the Foot of the Mountains, half a Day's Journey West from *Peking*; and his Majesty, attended by the principal Officers of his Army, besides his whole Court, went to see them tried.

Verbiest honoured.

OBSERVING that the Balls hit the Places they were levelled at by the Jesuit with his Instruments, he was so greatly pleased, that he made a solemn Feast for the *Tartarian* Governor, and principal Officers of the Army, in the Middle of the Fields, under Tents; drinking out of his Golden-Cup, to the Health of his Father-in-law, of his Officers, and even of those who had so exactly directed the Cannon. At length sending for *Verbiest*, who by his Orders was lodged near his own Tent, he said to him, *The Cannon you caused to be made for me the last Year were very serviceable against the Rebels, in the Province of Shen-si, Hù-quang, and Kyang-si, and I am well satisfied with your Services*: Then taking-off his Vest, furred with Martin-Skins of great Value, and also his Gown that was under it, he gave them to him, as a Testimony of his Friendship.

By the Emperor.

THEY continued several Days to make Proof of the Guns, in which Time they discharged twenty-three thousand Bullets, to the great Satisfaction of the *Mandarins*, whose Officers assisted at the same Time. *Verbiest* composed a

Treatise also on the founding of Cannon, and their Use, which he presented to the Emperor; with forty-four Tables of Figures necessary for understanding the Art, and of the Instruments proper to level the Cannon for shooting at any Mark.

Air and Weather.

A FEW Months afterwards, the Tribunal for enquiring into the Deserts of Persons who had done Service to the State, presented a Memorial to the Emperor, wherein they besought him to have Regard to the Service that *Nan-whay-jin* had done, by casting so many Pieces of Artillery. His Majesty granted their Petition, and bestowed on him a Title of Honour, like that conferred on the Vice-Roys, when they have deserved well in their Government.

To prevent the Superstition of the *Chinese*,^a (says our Author) who sacrifice to the Spirit of the Air, Mountains and Rivers, according to the various natural Events, and the different Works they begin, or finish, *Verbiest* fixed a Day to bless the Cannon in a solemn Manner. For this Purpose he erected an Altar in the Foundry, on which he placed a Crucifix, and then in his Surplice and Stole worshipped God, by nine Prostrations: And as it is the Custom in *China* to give Names to such Kinds of Works; so he gave, to every Piece of Cannon, the Names of a he, or she Saint, of the *Romish* Church, tracing the Characters that were to be engraven on the Breech of the Gun.^b

Blessed the Cannon.

C H A P. VII.

The NATURAL HISTORY.

S E C T. I.

The Climate, Air, and Soil of China.

Air wholesome. The Plague seldom. Mountainous Part. Charming Country: Lovely Plains: Uncultivated Lands: Barren Deserts in several Parts: Soil generally fertile. Produce of Grain. Two Crops of Rice. Corn-Mills.

Air wholesome.

CHINA being a Country of such vast Extent, must be differently affected in different Parts of it, with Regard to the Air, Weather,

^c Seasons, and other Properties which depend on the Influence of the celestial Bodies. Thus the Northern-Provinces are very cold in Winter, while the Southern are always temperate. In Summer these latter are excessively hot, and the Northern, for the general, tolerably cool, especially when the Wind blows from the North. The Days and Nights likewise are much longer and shorter in the Northern, than in the Southern Provinces; where, on the other Hand, Vegetables of all Kinds are more forward, and come to greater Perfection. In a Word, the Air of *China* is very healthful, is seldom incommoded with Stagnations, or infected with pestilential

^a That is, to prevent one Superstition by another.

^b *Du Halde's China*, p. 262, & seq.

Vapours:

Natural History. Vapours: So that the Plague has scarce ever found an Entrance there. To this great Benefit, doubtless, the North-Winds blowing frequently from *Tartary*, do not a little contribute; at least it is manifest, they do not produce that Calamity there: Although it is imagined by some (but indeed on very chimerical Grounds) that they are the Cause of it in *Europe*.

The Plague seldom. THERE is no less a Difference with respect to the Surface of the Land, and Fertility of the Soil in different Parts, than there is in the Air.

Mountainous Parts. Besides the Provinces of *Yun-nan*, *Quey-chew*, *Se-chuen*, and *Fo-kyen*, which are too mountainous to be cultivated sufficiently, that of *Che-kyang*, whose Eastern-Part is very fruitful, has hideous Mountains in the Western. The Land of *Quang-tong*, and *Quang-si*, so fine and fertile along the Sea-Coast, becomes frightful, and almost barren in divers Places, the farther it lies from thence. In the Province of *Kyang-nan*, the large District of *Whey-chew-fu* is entirely over-run with very high, and almost uninhabitable Mountains: They abound still more in the Provinces of *Shen-si*, and *Shan-si*, all whose Plains, put together, do not amount to a quarter Part of the Whole.

Charming Country. HAVING entered the Province of *Kyang-si*, from that of *Quang-tong*, you begin to discover the most beautiful Country in all *China*: One Part of it lies upon the great River, adorned with the fine Cities of *Ngan-king-fu*, *Kyang-ning-fu*, or *Nan-king*, and *Chin-kyang-fu*: Another Part runs along the great Canal, *Yu-lyang-ho*, beset with the most rich and populous Cities of the Province of *Kyang-nan*; as *Whay-ngan-fu*, *Yang-chew-fu*, *Chang-chew-fu*, *Su-chew-fu*; and a third Part borders on the Sea-Coasts of the Province of *Che-kyang*, where are the Lands of *Hang-chew-fu*, the Metropolis, *Hu-chew-fu*, and *Kyang-hing-hu*; which alone furnish more Silk than all the other Provinces of *China*.

Lovely Plains. IT must be confessed, that nothing appears more charming than these Plains, which are so level, that they seem to be laid-out by Rule: They are covered with Cities, and large Villages, and cut into an infinite Number of Canals, which have Communication with each other, and are navigated by Barks, without the least Danger. Their Water is clear, and excellent to drink. These Plains are cultivated with an Industry, which no People, but the *Chinese*, are capable of: They are withal so fertile, that in several Places they yield Rice twice a Year; and

frequently Wheat, and smaller Grain, between the two Crops.

BUT one must not judge of *China* in general by this Country. The Knowledge of a Part is not sufficient to give a distinct Notion of the Whole. But for the Opportunity which the Missionaries had of travelling-over the Empire, when they made the Map of it, we should still have been ignorant, that in most of the great Governments, there are Countries, which for more than twenty Leagues together, are very thinly peopled, almost intirely uncultivated, and often so wild, that they are uninhabitable.

As those Countries are remote from the great Roads usually taken by Travellers, they might easily have escaped the Knowledge of former Missioners, and Authors of printed Relations. The Reason why the Provinces of *Shen-si*, and *Se-chuen*, are much commended by some of them, is because they had seen the District of *Si-ngan-fu*, which is divided into thirty-seven Cities, most of them rich and populous. To a like Cause are to be attributed the Praises they bestow on the Lands of *Ching-tu-fu*, which are cut by artificial Canals, like those of the Provinces of *Kyang-nan*, and *Che-kyang*; not imagining that the Parts which they had no Opportunity of seeing differed so much, as in Effect they do, from those they had travelled through.

The Provinces of *Ho-nan*, and *Hu-quang*, are generally commended by those Writers: Yet great Part of the Western-Side of the former is desert, and uncultivated; and there are larger Desarts still in *Hu-quang*: However, it must be confessed, that the fertile Lands, contained in those two Provinces, produce Rice, and other Grain, sufficient to furnish the neighbouring Provinces, and especially that of the Court: For though *Pe-che-li* is one vast continued Plain, the Soil is always so dry, and destitute of Rivulets, that for all it abounds in Wheat, small Grain, and Pulse, it produces very little Rice, without which the *Chinese* could hardly make a Shift to live. Hence it is, that this Province, and especially *Pe-king*, which is the Resort of the whole Empire, could scarcely subsist without Supplies of Provisions from the other Provinces.

IT is true, that, generally speaking, the Land in all the Provinces, and even in *Quey-chew*, is fertile enough, and sometimes brings a double Crop: But it is entirely owing to the indefatigable Labour of the Husbandmen, that those Countries, where the Grounds are low and boggy, are

Soil and Grain.

Uncultivated Lands.

Barren Desarts.

In several Parts.

Soil generally fertile.

^a *Le Comte* says, they are so even, that one would think the Natives had been employed, ever since the Foundation of their Monarchy, in nothing else but levelling them. ^b For their Manner of cultivating both Plains and Hills, see before, p. 122. Also *Le Comte's* Memoirs of *China*, p. 91, & seq. ^c *Le Comte* must be included among the rest.

Natural History.

capable of bearing Corn. Add to this, that several Provinces being full of Mountains, which afford but a small Quantity of Land fit for Tillage, it happens sometimes, that the whole Produce of the Empire is scarce sufficient for the Sustainance of the prodigious Number of Inhabitants^a.

Produce of Grain.

THE Provinces which lie to the North and West, as *Pe-che-li*, *Shan-si*, *Shen-si*, and *Se-chuen*, produce Wheat, Barley, several Kinds of Millet, Tobacco, Pease that are always green,^b also black and yellow Pease, which serve instead of Oats to feed their Horses: But in the Southern Parts these Sorts of Grain are in no Esteem. The same Provinces likewise produce Rice, and that in several Places where the Earth is dry, but then not so plentifully: Besides it is harder, and requires more boiling than the Rice of the Southern Provinces, especially *Hu-quang*, *Kyang-nan*, and *Che-kyang*, which produce great Quantities, because the Lands lie low, and have Plenty of Water.

Two Crops of Rice.

RICE is sown twice a Year in some Provinces, and is much better than that which grows in *Europe*^c. *Navarette* says, they gather it in *June*, and *December*: That the Southern Provinces have more Plenty of this Grain, and the Northern of Corn, although the former abound with it. The Plenty of these several Sorts of Grain and Pulse is exceeding great. In 1664, *Navarette* bought very clean and good Wheat, brought to his Door, for Eighteen-pence^d the Bushel; and Rice, every Grain as big as a Pine-Apple Kernel, for half a Crown. In *Shan-tong*, the same Year, Wheat was sold for Six-pence the Bushel^e. To grind their Corn, they make use of a very simple Kind of Mill, consisting of a round Stone-Table, placed horizontally like a Mill-Stone, whereon they roll circularly a Stone-Cylinder, which by its Weight bruises the Corn^f.

Corn-Mills.

ACCORDING to *Magalhaens*, the *Chinese* reckon, in respect of Provision, or Eatables, six principal Sorts of Grain, Rice, Wheat, Oats, Millet, Pease, and Beans: Six Sorts of Flesh of tame Animals, Horses, Cows, Pork, Dogs, Mules, and Goats: And an hundred Sorts of Fruits, as Pears, Apples, Peaches, Grapes, Oranges, Walnuts, Chestnuts, Pomegranates, Citrons, and several other Kinds: All which are to be found in *Europe*, excepting three^g.

Fruit-Trees.

SECT. II.

I. FRUIT-TREES.

Fruits of Europe. Kind of Olives. The Oil-Tree. China-Oranges. Lemons and Citrons. Yew-tse, or Pamplimus. Melons, and other Fruit. The Li-chi. The Tse-tse: A Kind of Fig. The Long-yen. The Mwey-shu. The Ja-ca. The Shi-ku. Milimbines, Karambolas. The U-tong-shu. Cassia-Tree. Pepper-Tree. Betel-Tree. Cinnamon. The Camphire, how gathered: Preserves dead Bodies. The Pea-Tree.

THE *Chinese* have almost all the Fruits^h to be met-with in *Europe*, besides many other Sorts not to be found there at all; however they have not so great Variety of each Kind: Thus they have but three or four Sorts of Apples, seven or eight of Pears, as many of Peaches, and no good Cherries at all, although they grow every-where. Neither are any of these Fruits, except the Muscadine-Grapes and Pomegranates, to be compared to ours; because the *Chinese* are not so skilful as the *Europeans* in cultivating the Trees, and improving the Flavour of the Fruit: Yet their Peaches are as good, nay one Kind of them is better: But in some Places, unless eaten sparingly, they bring-on a Dysentery, which is very dangerous in *China*. Their Apricots would not be bad, did they but give them Time to ripenⁱ. Although their Grapes are excellent, yet they make no Wine, not knowing the Way. What they generally use is made of Rice, and very pleasant, being red, white, and pale. Their Quince-Wine is very delicious. The *Chinese* drink all their Wine very hot^j.

NAVARETTE says, there are no Olives in *China*^k; but *Du Halde* describes them under the Name of *Tsin-lan*, or *Quang-lan*. That Author observes, that in Figure and Colour they very nearly resemble our large Olives: It is one of the ten Kinds spoken of in the Books, which treat of Olives, and what they say of its Nature, Colour, and Soil where it grows, suits them very well. In all Probability, if they were prepared in the same Manner as in *Europe*, they would have the same Taste. The Tree is large, and the Leaves resemble those of the Olive.

^a *Du Halde's China*, p. 7, & seqq. *Navarette's Description of China*, p. 53, confirms this last Remark.

^b *Le Comte's Memoirs of China*, p. 95. *Du Halde*, as before, p. 272, and 314. ^c In the Original, three Rials; a Rial being equivalent to Sixpence English.

^d *Navarette*, as before, p. 32, and 53. ^e *Du Halde*, as before, p. 303. ^f *Magalhaens's Relation of China*, p. 142. ^g *Le Comte*, as before, p. 95. *Du Halde*, as before, p. 4, and 317. ^h *Navarette*, as before, p. 32. ⁱ He says, he never saw any Heart-Cherries there.

When

Natural History.

When they have a Mind to gather the Olives before they are thoroughly ripe, which is their Time of eating them, instead of beating them down with long Poles, which shatters the Branches, and hurts the Tree, they make a Hole in the Body of it; then putting-in some Salt, stop it up, and in a few Days after the Fruit drops of itself ^a.

Oil Tree.

LE COMTE says, their Olives are different from the European, and that they press no Oil out of them; because, perhaps, they are not fit for that Purpose, or that the Chinese have not yet thought of it ^b. However, Navarette takes Notice, that they have Oil of several Sorts for three Halfpence a Pound ^c. He adds, that the Oil made of a small Seed, called *Afonjoli*, is much used for making Puff-paste Fritters, and in other Victuals ^d. There is likewise a Tree that bears a Fruit, yielding an Oil, called *Cha-yew*, which, when fresh, is perhaps the best in all China: It very nearly resembles the Shrub of the *Vu-i-cha*, (or Bohea-Tea) in the Shape of its Leaves, Colour of the Wood, and some other Qualities; but differs from it, as to Size, Thickness, Figure, Flowers, and Fruit; which last becomes the more oleaginous, when kept after it is gathered. These Trees are of a moderate Height, and grow without Culture on the Sloping of Hills, and even in stony Valleys: They bear green Berries of an irregular Form, filled with a Sort of Kernels, which are not so hard as the Stones of other Fruits ^e.

China-Oranges.

OR Oranges, known by the Name of China-Oranges, they have several excellent Kinds, although the Portuguese brought-over but one Sort to Europe; where all were propagated from a single Tree, which is still preserved at Lisbon in the Garden of the Count de St. Lawrence. There is a Sort of them in great Esteem with the Chinese: These are small, and the Rind is thin, smooth, and very soft. There is another Sort that comes from the Province of Fo-kyen, that has an admirable Taste: They are larger, and the Rind is of a beautiful Red ^f. The Europeans commonly say, that a Dish of these Oranges would become the most sumptuous Tables in Europe. They have larger at Kanton, which are yellow, agreeable to the Taste, and very whole-

some: They give them even to sick Persons, roasting them first in hot Embers, then cutting them in two, and filling them with Sugar ^g, the Juice being reckoned a great Pectoral. Others have a sharp Taste, and are used by the Europeans in Sauces ^h. Navarette observes, they make one Species of them into dry, flat Cakes (like the *Chiqueys*) which are excellent good, cordial, and nourishing: They are valued at Manilla, and carried to Mexico as a great Dainty ⁱ.

Fruit-Trees.

LEMONS and Citrons are very common in some Southern Provinces, and extraordinary large; but these are scarce ever eaten, being only made use of for Ornaments in Houses, where they put seven or eight in a China-Dish, to please the Sight and Smell: However, they are exceeding good, when candied. Another Sort of Lemon, not much larger than a Walnut, is likewise in great Esteem: It is round, green, and sharp, being reckoned excellent good for Ragous. The Tree that bears them is sometimes put in Boxes, and serves to adorn the outward Courts, or Halls of Houses ^j.

Lemons and Citrons.

THE Fruits, called in the Indies, *Pamplimus*, and in China, *Yew-tse*, have nothing in the Taste to recommend them, more than the *Tsin-lan*, or Olives. They are ordinarily bigger than our Citrons: The Fruit is sometimes reddish, sometimes white, and of a Taste between sweet and sour. The Tree is more prickly than the Citron-Tree ^k.

Yew-tse, or Pamplimus.

BESIDES Melons of the European Kind, there are two other Sorts in China; one of which is very small, and yellow within, has a sweet Taste, and may be eaten, Rind and all, like Apples. The other Kind, which is called a Water-Melon, is very large, and long: The Inside is white, and sometimes red, containing a sweet cooling Juice, that quenches Thirst, and never does any Harm, even in the hottest Weather: Yet these are not so delicious as those which come from a Place in Tartary, called *Ha-mi* ^l, at a great Distance from Pe-king.

Melons, and other Fruit.

BESIDES the above-mentioned Fruits, which Europeans are acquainted with, there are others, known to them only by the Relation of Travelers, and seem to have been imported into China from the neighbouring Islands; such as the Fan-

^a Du Halde's China, p. 8. ^b Le Comte's Memoirs of China, p. 95. ^c But he believes both these, and Almond-Trees, would thrive here, p. 37. ^d Navarette's Description of China, p. 32. ^e Du Halde, as before, p. 12. ^f Navarette says, two Sorts are common in Portugal. ^g This seems to be the same, which Le Comte says is most valued, and sent as a Rarity to the Indies: That it is no bigger than a Billiard-Ball; that the Rind is of a reddish Yellow, fine, clear, and very smooth; yet that the bigger Sort (such as brought into Europe) seemed to him the best. ^h Le Comte, p. 98, says, this Sort differs nothing from the Portugal Oranges, only that they are more firm, not easily parted from the Rind, nor divided into Segments. ⁱ Le Comte, as before, p. 97, & seq. ^j Du Halde, as before, p. 317. ^k Navarette, as before, p. 37. ^l Le Comte, as before, p. 98. ^m Du Halde, as before, p. 317. ⁿ Du Halde, as before, p. 8. ^o Khamil, or Khamul, a City of Little-Bukharia, to the North-West of the Province of Shen-si. See the Map.

Natural History.

po-lo-mye, or *Ananas*, *Chew-ku*, or *Gayavas*, *Pa-tsyau*, or *Bananas*, &c. which are found in many other Countries, and seem to have been brought from the neighbouring Islands. We shall therefore pass them over here, to speak of those, which are not to be met with any-where else ^a.

The Li-chi.

WHAT they call *Li-chi* ^b (if it be of a good Sort, for there are several) is about the Size of a Date: The Stone is equally long, and hard: It is covered with a soft Pulp, full of Moisture, and of an excellent Flavour, which it partly loses when dried, becoming black and wrinkled, like Prunes: The Rind, or Skin, outwardly resembles Shagreen; but it is smooth within, and of a Figure nearly oval ^c.

THE *Li-chi* of *Shan-fi* and *Shen-fi*, are bigger and firmer, so as to be cut like Apples; but of a different Colour. These they either gather early, to ripen them on Straw, or dip in scalding Water, to take-off an ill sour Taste, which they have at first gathering. This might be made excellent by grafting ^d.

THIS, according to *Navarette*, is reckoned by the *Chinese* the Queen of Fruits. Though surprizingly plenty, yet they are not valued the less. The Fruit is a little bigger than a large Walnut, the Shell green and thin; within it is as white as Snow, with a Stone as black as Jet. The Taste and Flavour is delicious to Admiration, not to be exceeded by any other Fruit except the *Ate* ^e (or *Ya-ta*.) They usually put them into cold Water before they eat them: They say they are of a hot Nature. When they have eaten as many as they can, they drink a little Water, and have a Stomach to eat more. The Tree is large and handsome. The Author found them also at *Batan*, near *Manilla* ^f. *Le Comte* knew not any Fruit in *Europe* to compare with it for a delicious Taste: Yet he says, it is unwholesome to eat a Quantity, and of so hot a Nature, as to cause a Man's whole Body to break-out into Pimples. The *Chinese* keep them to eat all the Year round, being used especially in Tea, to which it gives a sharp Taste, more agreeable than that of Sugar.

The Tse-tse.

THE Fruit *Tse-tse* ^g, grows almost in all Parts of *China*, and is of several Kinds. Those in the Southern Provinces taste much like Sugar, and melt in one's Mouth. The Rind is smooth, transparent, and of a shining Red, especially when ripe. Some are in Shape like an Egg, but

usually bigger: The Seeds are black, and flat; the Meat is very watery, and almost liquid, which they suck-out at one of the Ends. When they are dried, like our Figs, they become mealy; but in Time there grows a Sort of sugared Crust upon them, from which they receive a most delicious Flavour.

THE *Portuguese* of *Ma-kau* call this Fruit a Fig, not from its Shape, but because, when dried, it becomes mealy and sweet ^h, like a Fig: The Trees which bear them, when grafted, look very pretty. There is great Plenty of them, especially in the Province of *Ho-nan*. They are as tall, and spreading, as our middling Walnut-Trees; the Leaves large, and of a beautiful Green, which changes in the Autumn to an agreeable Red: The Fruit also is about the Bigness of an Apple ⁱ, and, as it ripens, grows of a bright Yellow.

THEY are of different Kinds, the Fruit of some having a more thin, transparent, and ruddy Rind; while that of others, to give them a finer Flavour, must be put upon Straw to ripen; yet they are all very agreeable to the Sight, and good to eat: It does not come to Maturity on the Tree till the Beginning of Autumn. They commonly dry them, as they do Figs in *Europe*, and sell them all over the Empire. They have an excellent Taste, like that of our best dried Figs: Such also is the smaller Sort, that grows in *Shan-fi*. The Trees that bear them need no cultivating: They grow no-where but in *China*, and in no Province so plenty, as in that of *Shan-tong* ^k. The *Su-ping* of *Boim* must be a Species.

THERE is another Sort of Fruit in the Southern Provinces, which turns to great Account in *China*, called *Long-yen* ^l, that is, the *Dragon's Eye*: Its Shape is round, the Rind smooth and yellowish, the Pulp white, very juicy, and often sourish. Though not so pleasant as the *Li-chi*, it is said to be more wholesome, and never to do one Hurt: The Tree, which bears this Fruit, is as large as the Walnut-Tree ^m. *Navarette* says, they are called *Dragon's Eyes*, because the Stones within them are just like the Eyes of a Dragon, as the *Chinese* paint them. He adds, that this Fruit being more fragrant and sweet than the *Li-chi*, would be better than it, provided it was equal in Quantity: That it is sold dry throughout the Empire, and boiled makes a pleasant and nourishing Broth ⁿ.

^a *Du Halde's China*, p. 317.

^b And the *Portuguese*, *Lechia*.

^c *Le Comte's Memoirs of China*, p. 96.

And *Du Halde*, as before, p. 8.

^d *Le Comte*, as before, p. 96, & seq. *Du Halde*, as before, p. 104.

^e An excellent Fruit, like a little Pine-Apple, but the Rind is green, the Pulp white as Snow, and very delicious. It is divided into little Cells, with each a black Kernel.

^f *Navarette's Description of China*, p. 36, & seq.

^g *Le Comte* writes, *Se-tse*; and *Magalhaens*, *Su-fi*.

^h *Magalhaens*, p. 142, says, it is so delicious, that it may well be called a Lump of Sugar.

ⁱ The same Author says, of a Quince, but somewhat flatter, or seemingly more crushed.

^k *Du Halde*, as before, p. 8, and 104.

^l *Navarette* writes, *Lung-jen*.

^m *Le Comte*, as before, p. 96.

ⁿ *Du Halde*, as before, p. 8.

^o *Navarette*, as before, p. 37.

Trees & Shrubs of India

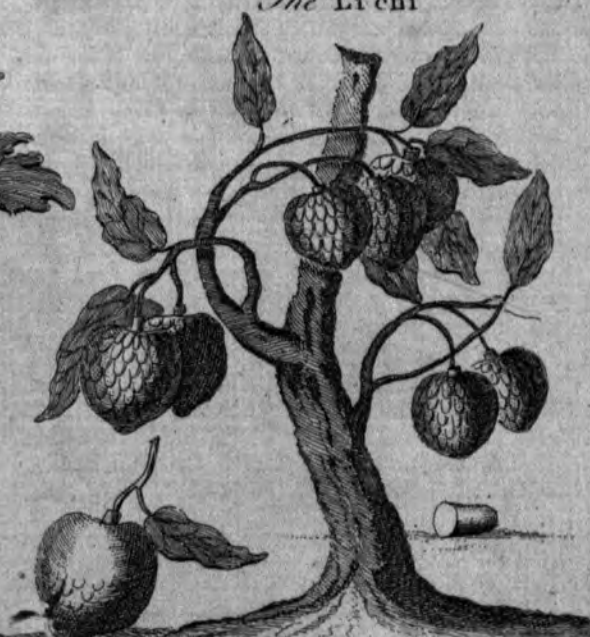
Two Sorts of Cotton Trees .



The Ja ka



The Li chi



A. Parr Sculp

Vol. 4. Pl. 31. P. 292.

Trees from Boim.

The Su ping

The Chew kü or Goyavas



N^o 143.

J. Wood Sculp.

Vol. IV Plate 45. p. 292.

Natural History.

The Mwey-shu.

The Ja-ca.

The Shi-ku.

Millimbines, Karambolas.

THE *Li-chi*, and *Long-yen*, according to *Magalhaens*, are not eaten till they are rotten; nor is the Want of them supplied in *Europe* by *Quinces*, *Medlars*, and *Services* (which one meets with also in *Shan-fi*) there being no Comparison in the Taste.

THERE is also something singular in the Tree they call *Mwey-shu*: It bears a little four Fruit, which Women and Children eat: Being dried, and put into Brine, they sell it for a Medicine, and give to sick People, because it sharpens the Appetite. The Tree is very large, and the Author admired to see, that it blossomed about *Christmas*, when it freezes hard, and the Snow falls. He first observed it in 1663, the Flowers being very white.

THAT which the *Portuguese* call *Jaca* (or *Jaka*) the *Spaniards*, *Nangcas* (and the *Chinese* *Po-lo-mye*) is, in *Navarette's* Opinion, the largest Fruit in the World, some weighing half an hundred Weight. *Kircher* appropriates it to *China*; but he was misinformed; for it grows also in *India*, the Islands, and *Manilla*. They cut it with an Ax: Within it are many Nuts as yellow as Gold, and in each of them a Kernel. This roasted is very savoury, and the Kernel delicious. The *Indians* dress it very well with the Milk of the *Cocoa-Nuts*. This Fruit grows on the Body of the Tree, and not on the Boughs, for they could never bear it.

THE *Shi-ku*, called at *Manilla*, *Chiqueys*, and by the *Portuguese*, *Figocaque*, are of several Sorts; but all delicate. Some are small, in the Shape of an Acorn, but much bigger: They have no Kernel. The Shell is like the Rind of an Onion, the Flesh is sweet and pleasant, yellow, and very soft when ripe; so that making a little Hole at the Top, they suck it out. There are others bigger than *Burgamy-Pears*, and of the Colour of a fine red Poppy, very beautiful to the Eye. Before they grow soft, they shrink considerably; but when they have lain a Day in Water, they come-out as fair as a *Pippin*. These two Sorts are ripe about *September*, and very plenty. There are others exceeding good, and large, greenish, and flat, which ripen in *December*. These have Kernels enough, but they are small. They dry them in the Sun: Every one is as broad as a Man's Hand: They keep a great while, and are delicious, especially if steeped one Night in Wine. There comes a Sugar over them, which is sold by itself; and being put into Water in Summer, makes a pleasant Drink.

THE Fruit called at *Manilla*, *Millimbines*, and *Karambolas*, is found in the Southern Parts of

China: Some are sweet, others sour. When ripe, they smell exactly like *Quinces*. An excellent Conserve is made of both Sorts. There is nothing finer to quench a sick Person's Thirst. It is very green at first, and, when full ripe, of a *Quince-Colour*.

THE *Plane-Tree*, and its Fruit, is found in *China*: Though neither in *Mexico*, nor the *Philippine* Isles. It differs much from those commonly called *Plantans*.

THE *U-tong-shu*, is very large, and resembles the *Sycamore*: Its Leaves are long, broad, and joined to a Stalk of a Foot in Length. This Tree is so bushy, and crowded with Tufts, that the Rays of the Sun cannot penetrate. The Manner of bearing its Fruit is very extraordinary: Towards the End of *August*, there grow, at the Extremities of the Branches, instead of Flowers, small Tufts of Leaves, which are more white, and soft, than the rest, and not so broad. On the Edge of every Leaf are generated three or four small Grains, of the Bigness of a Pea; containing a white Substance, of a Taste not unlike the Kernel of a *Hazle-Nut* before it is ripe. Nothing can be better to adorn a Garden, than this Tree.

In the Province of *Yun-nan*, towards the Kingdom of *Ava*, there are *Cassia-Trees*, *Cassia Fistula*: They are pretty tall, and called by the *Chinese*, *Chang-ko-tse-shu*, or, the Tree with long Fruit; because it bears long Pods (longer than those seen in *Europe*.) These are so many hollow Tubes, divided, by Partitions, into Cells, which contain a pithy Substance.

THE Soil of *China* yields no Sort of Spice, except a Kind of Pepper, called *Wha-tsiau*: It is the Husk of a Grain as big as a Pea; the Kernel of which is too hot and biting to be made use of. The Colour is grey, mixed with a few Streaks of red. The Plant, which produces it, in some Places grows like a thick Bush; in others, resembles a pretty tall Tree: It is neither so pungent, nor agreeable to the Taste, as Pepper, and is seldom used for seasoning Victuals, except by the meaner People. This Pepper is very different from that of the *East-Indies*, which the *Chinese*, by their Commerce, procure in as much Plenty as if it grew at home. When the Grain is ripe, it opens of itself, and discovers a little Kernel as black as Jet, casting a strong Smell very offensive to the Head; for which Reason they gather them by Intervals, not being able to remain long on the Tree. Having exposed these Grains to the Sun, they cast-away the Kernel, which is too hot and strong, and only use the rest.

^a *Magalhaens's* Relation of *China*, p. 147. ^b These must be Kinds of Figs like the *Tse-tse*. ^c *Navarette's* Description of *China*, p. 34, & seq. ^d *Le Comte's* Memoirs of *China*, p. 158. *Du Halde's* *China*, p. 320. ^e The same, p. 14. ^f The same, p. 8, and 318. ^g *Le Comte's* Memoirs of *China*, p. 100. ^h The same.

Natural History.
Betel-Tree.
Cinnamon.

BESIDES the Trees producing Betel, much a used in the Southern Provinces, we meet with the *Quay-pe*, a Kind of Cinnamon in *Quang-si*, and the District of *Tsu-chew-fu*, chiefly on the Mountain *Pe-she*. It is not so much esteemed, even in *China*, as that which comes from other Places: Its Colour inclines rather to grey than red, which is the Colour of the best Cinnamon of *Seylan*: It is also more thick, and rough; nor is it so odoriferous. However, it has the same Virtue of strengthening the Stomach, and exhilarating the Spirits; and Experience shews, it has all the Qualities of Cinnamon, though not in so great Perfection. One meets, now-and-then, with some more biting than that which is brought from the *Indies*; and this they say becomes grey also, when it is long a drying ^a. *Navarette* affirms, that there are many of these Trees in *Quang-tong*, and that the Cinnamon is so good, that they do not stand in need of *Seylan*-Cinnamon. He adds, that *China* produces no Cloves, nor Nutmegs, as *Mendoza* has written.

The Camphire,

THE Camphire-Tree, called by the *Chineses*, *Chang-shu*, is vastly large, and beautiful. The Camphire ^b gathered from it is somewhat coarse, the finest being that of the Island of *Borneo*. The Wood, of which they make Household-Goods, smells very strong; so that the Saw-Dust strewed about the Beds, drives-away the Bugs; and five Leagues round, where these Trees grow, there is not one Bug to be seen.

How gathered,

A Priest, who had been some considerable Time in *Borneo*, where the finest is produced, informed *Navarette* in what Manner they gather the Camphire. Before the Sun rises, a Liquor oozes through the Trunk of the Tree, and the Branches, which moves-about just like Quick-silver; then shaking the Boughs strongly, it falls-down on Cloths and Sheets spread underneath to receive it: There it consolidates; and having gathered it, they put it into Canes, where they keep it. As soon as the Sun appears, all that is left sinks into the Tree again. The People of *Borneo*, who keep their Dead several Days in the House before they bury them, to prevent the Corpse putrifying with the great Heat of the Country, make use of Camphire after this Manner. They seat the Body on a low Chair, open below, and from Time to Time blow Camphire into the Mouth with a Cane, which passing downwards, in a short Time works-out at the other End; and thus the Carcasses are kept many Days without the least Corruption ^c.

Preserved Dead Bodies.

HERE it may be proper to take Notice of the Tree which yields Pease; for their Figure, Colour, Pod, and Taste, though somewhat rank, shew that they are of the Kind of ordinary Pease-Tree. The Tree is common enough in several Provinces: It is very tall, as well as spreading; and for Thickness scarce yields to any other ^d.

Varnish-Tree.

The Pea-Tree.

2. Four very remarkable Trees.

^b The Varnish-Tree: Shape and Size: How propagated. Varnish procured by Incision: Its bad Effects: Precautions used by the Workmen: Quantity gathered: Disease caused by it: Excellent Qualities. The Oil-Varnish of singular Use. The Tallow-Tree: Its Fruit: The Tallow, and Kernel. Candles, how made of it. Tallow, how separated, when gathered. Farther Account. The Wax-Tree. Wax, how produced. The Kû-shu Tree: Size for gilding. Odd Situation. The Tree described.

AMONG the Trees that deserve the Attention of the Public, and are most likely to excite the Envy of *Europeans*, there are four which claim the Preference: The Varnish-Tree, the *Tong-shu*, or Oil-Tree, the Tallow-Tree, and white Wax-Tree.

THE Varnish-Tree, called *Tsi-shu*, is neither tall, bushy, nor spreading: Its Bark is whitish, its Leaf nearly resembles that of the wild Cherry-Tree; and the reddish Gum, called *Tsi*, which it distils Drop by Drop, the Tears of the Turpentine-Tree ^e. It yields a much greater Quantity of Liquor, if an Incision be made in it; but then it perishes so much the sooner ^f.

THESE Trees are found in the Provinces of *Kyang-si*, and *Se-chuen*; but those of the District of *Kan-chew*, one of the most Southern Cities of *Kyang-si*, yield that which is most esteemed.

THE Varnish ought not to be drawn till the Trees are of seven or eight Year's Growth; for that which is procured before, is not so fit for Use. The Trunk of the youngest Tree, from whence they begin to draw it, is a *Chinese* Foot ^g in Circumference. It is said, that the Varnish of such Trees is better than that which distils from those older, but that they yield much less: Yet the Merchants make no Scruple to mix both together. These Trees, whose Leaf and Bark are very like those of the Ash, are scarce ever more than fifteen Feet high; and when they are of that Growth, the Trunk is about two Feet

The Varnish-Tree.

Shape and Size.

^a Du Halde's *China*, p. 14.

^b The Camphire is supposed to be gathered from the Roots of the Cinnamon-Tree.

^c *Navarette's* Description of *China*, p. 34.

^d resembles melted Pitch, or Tar, excepting that it has no Smell, when used.

^e *Le Comte's* Memoirs of *China*, p. 148.

^f *Du Halde*, as before, p. 9.

^g See its Measure before, p. 136.

^a *Du Halde*, as before, p. 9.

^b *Le Comte*

^c See its Measure before, p. 136.

^d See its Measure before, p. 136.

^e See its Measure before, p. 136.

^f See its Measure before, p. 136.

^g See its Measure before, p. 136.

Trees & Shrubs of India

The Fu ling or China Root. P. 307.

The Tsi Mu, or Tarnish Tree.

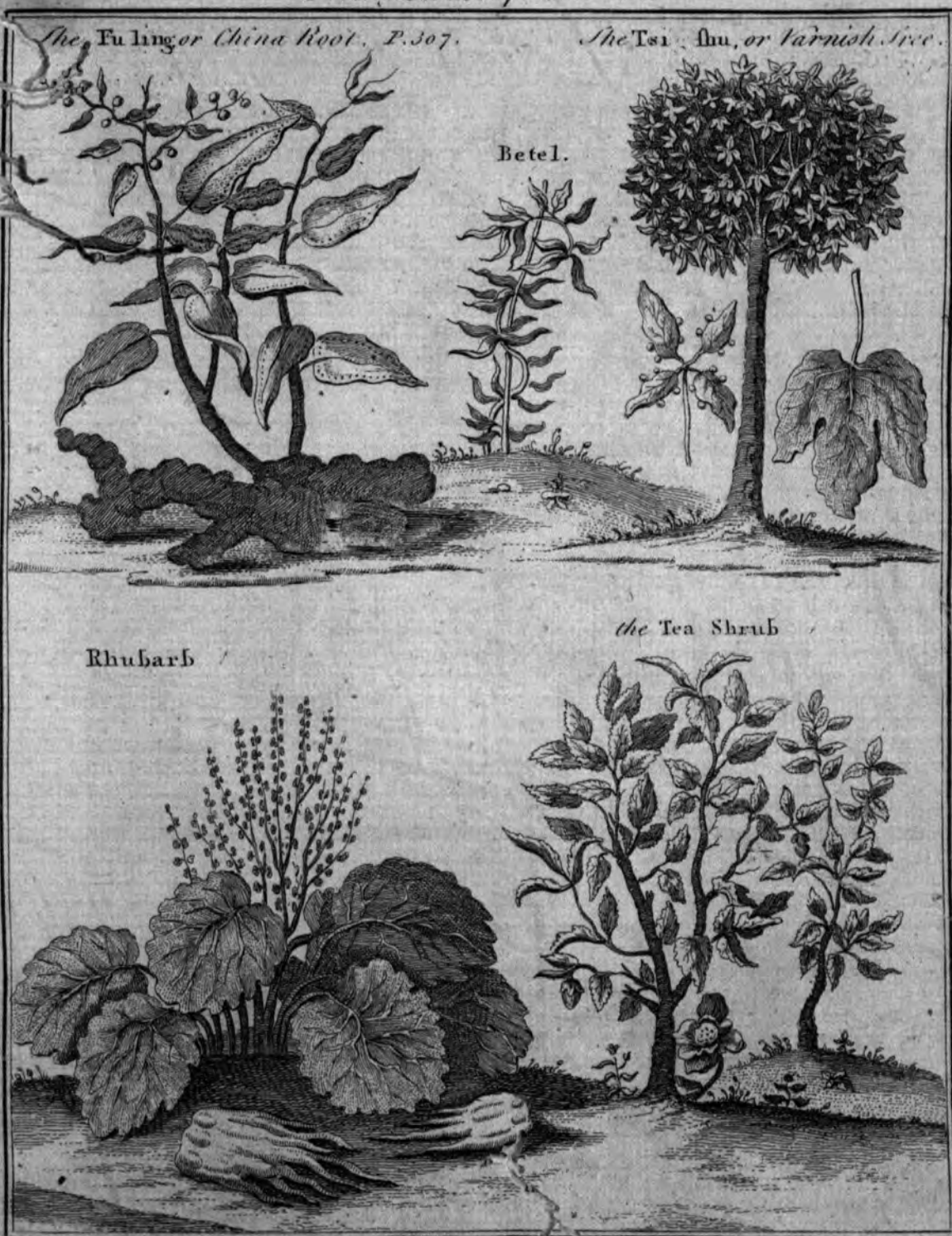
Betel.

Rhubarb

the Tea Shrub

A. Parr Sculp

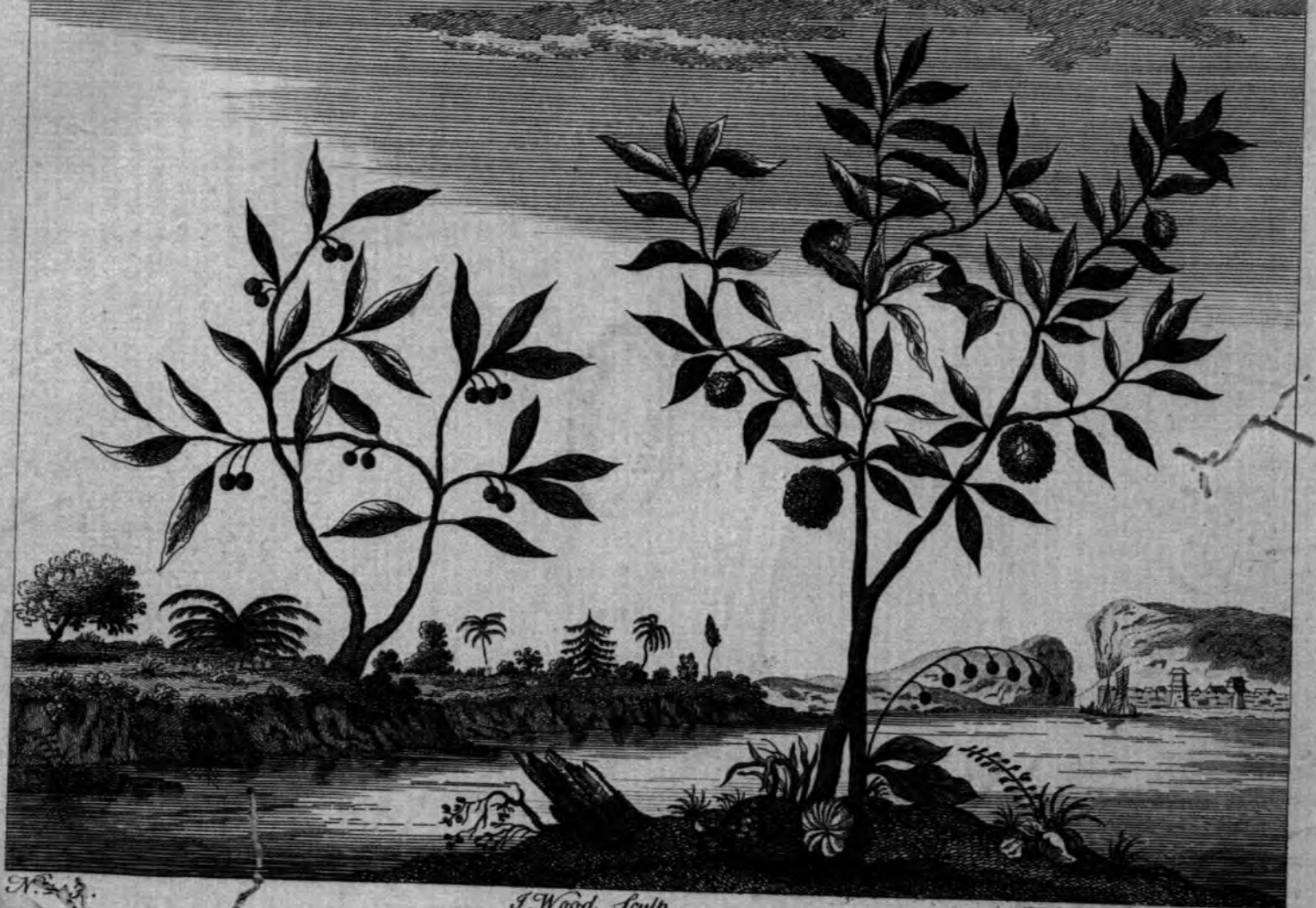
Vol. 4. Pl. 32. P. 294.



Quey pe or Cinnamon

Trees from Boim.

The Ya to or A to p. 294.



J. Wood Sculp.

Vol. IV. Plate 46. p. 294.

Natural History.

How propagated.



and an half in Compass. It is affirmed, that they bear neither Flowers, nor Fruit, and that they multiply in the Manner following :

IN the Spring, when the Tree begins to sprout, they chuse the most promising Sprig that proceeds from the Trunk, not from the Branches ; and when it is about a Foot long, they coat it with yellow Clay. This Coat begins about two Inches above the Place where it rises, and reaches four or five Inches lower : It is at least three Inches thick, is laid-on very close, and covered with a Mat carefully tied about it, to secure it from Rain, and the Injuries of Air : It is left, in this Manner, from the vernal to the autumnal Equinox, and then they open the Earth a very little Way, to examine the Condition of the Roots, which the Sprig usually shoots-forth, and are divided into several Strings. If these Strings are of a yellowish, or reddish Colour, they judge that it is Time to separate the Sprig from the Tree ; and then cutting it dexterously, without doing it the least Damage, afterwards plant it : But if the Strings are still white, it is a Sign they are too tender ; and so they close-up the Coat again, and defer cutting the Shoot till the next Spring. But whether it is planted in the Spring, or Autumn, a good deal of Ashes must be put into the Hole, prepared for that Purpose ; otherwise the Pisimires, as they affirm, would devour the tender Roots, or at least get all the Sap, and so cause them to wither.

Varnish procured.

THE Varnish is to be procured from these Trees only in the Summer-Season : For in the Winter they yield none ; and that which distils in the Spring, or Autumn, is always mixed with Water : Besides, they yield it only in the Night-time. In order to draw-out the Varnish, they make several horizontal Incisions in the Bark round the Trunk, which are either deeper, or shallower, according to its Thickness. The first Row of Incisions is but seven Inches from the Ground, the second is at the same Distance above the first, and thus at the End of every seven Inches there is a Row of Incisions, not only to the Top of the Trunk, but even along such of the Branches as are of a sufficient Thickness to bear it.

By Incision.

THEY use a little Knife, with a semicircular Blade, to make these Incisions ; which must not be done directly downward, but slanting, nor deeper than the Bark is thick. While the Operator makes them with one Hand, he thrusts the Edge of a Shell, which he has in the other, as far-in as he can, that is about half a Chinese Inch ; and this is sufficient to support the Shell. These Shells are very common in China, and much larger than our biggest Oyster-Shells. The In-

cisions being made in the Evening, next Morning they gather what is run into the Shells : The Evening following they fix them again in the same Incisions, and continue so doing till the End of the Summer. The Proprietors of the Trees do not usually draw-off the Varnish themselves, but let them, for the Season, at the Rate of Two-pence halfpenny a Foot to Merchants, who hire Labourers to attend, giving them an Ounce of Silver a Month, if they find their own b Victuals, which is most common ; if not, then they have but Three halfpence a Day. One of these Labourers is sufficient to take Care of fifty Feet of Tree ^a.

IT is commonly reported, that this Liquor, drawn cold, has certain venomous Qualities ; and that there is no Way of preventing its mischievous Effects in pouring it from one Vessel to another, or stirring it, but by avoiding to suck-in the Effluvia with the Breath. The same Care is to be observed in boiling it ^b. As it is necessary to use some Precautions, to secure the Labourers from its bad Effects, the Merchants are obliged to have a large Vessel of Oil, wherein has been boiled a certain Quantity of the fleshy Filaments, which are found intermixed with the Fat of Hogs, and remain after the Fat has been melted. The Proportion is one Ounce to a Pound of Oil. When the Workmen go to place the Shells in the Trees, they carry with them a little of this Oil, wherewith they rub the Face and Hands ; and in the Morning, when they have gathered the Varnish, and return to the Merchants, they rub themselves more carefully with it. After Dinner they wash their Bodies with hot Water, prepared by the Merchant, wherein has been boiled a certain Quantity of the outward rough Shell of Chestnuts, the Bark of the Fir-Tree, Saltpetre in Crystal, and a Sort of Blits, an Herb eaten in China, and the Indies ; all which are supposed to be of a cold Nature. They wash themselves in a little Tin-Bason, having some Objection to Copper.

DURING the Time they are at work at the Trees, their Heads are covered with a Linen-Bag, tied about their Necks, wherein are only two Holes for the Eyes : Before them they wear a Sort of Apron, made of Doe-Skin, which is hung-about their Necks with Strings, and tied round their Middles : They have also Buskins of the same, and long Gloves on their Arms. When they gather this Varnish, they have a Vessel made of Neats-Leather, fastened to their Girdle : Then with one Hand they take-out the Shells, and scrape them with a small Iron-Instrument, which they hold in the other, till they have gotten-out all the Varnish : At the Bottom

Varnish Tree.

Its bad Effects.

Precautions used.

By the Workmen.

^a Du Halde's China, p. 336, & seq.

^b The same, p. 9.

Natural History.

of the Tree is a Basket, wherein they leave the Shells till the Evening. To facilitate coming at the Varnish, the Proprietors take care to plant the Trees not far-asunder; and when the Time of gathering it is come, they lay a great Number of Poles from one to another, which fastened with Cords, serve instead of Ladders to get-up by.

Quantity gathered,

THE Merchant has always ready at his House, a great Earthen-Vessel, placed under a square, wooden Frame, like that of a Table, supported by four Feet. On the Frame is a thin Cloth, (whose four Corners are fastened to Rings) laid very slack, whereon they pour the Varnish; and when the Fluid-Part has run-through, they wring-out the rest, all but a little that remains behind, which is sold to the Druggists, as being sometimes used in Physic. They are well-enough satisfied with their Bargain, when a thousand Trees, in one Night, yields twenty Pound of Varnish. After the Gathering is over, the Merchant puts the Varnish in wooden Buckets, well-caulked on the Outside, fastening-on the Covers with strong Nails. A Pound of Varnish, while it is fresh, is valued at about Eighteen-pence^a; and the Merchant gains double, or more, according to the Distance of the Place to which it is carried.

Disease caused by it.

THE Labourers pay very dear for gathering the Varnish, if they do not take the above-mentioned Precautions. The Disease begins with a Kind of Ring-Worm, which in the Space of a Day covers the whole Body, Face and all; for it spreads in a few Hours, and grows very red. Soon after the Person's Face becomes bloated, and his Body, which swells to an extraordinary Degree, seems quite covered with a Leprosy. When a Man is attacked with this Distemper, they give him, immediately, to prevent those Accidents, a considerable Quantity of the aforesaid medicinal Water for washing with, which purges him violently: They afterwards make for him a strong Fumigation with the same Water, wrapping him up very close. By this Means the Swelling is removed, but the Skin is not so soon healed; for it cracks in several Places, from whence proceeds a great deal of Water. To remedy this, they take some of the Blits above-mentioned, dry, and burn them: Then upon the Part most affected put the Ashes, which imbibing the sharp Humour, the chopped Skin dries and falls-off, a new Skin succeeding in Place of it^b.

Excellent Qualities.

THE Chinese Varnish, besides the Beauty it gives to the smallest Piece of Work it is applied to, has likewise the Property of preserving the Wood, and hindering the least Moisture from

entering it^c. It takes all Colours alike, and, if well-made, loses nothing of its Lustre and Clearness, by Change of Air, or otherwise. But to do it well requires Time and Care; for one or two Layings-on is not sufficient: Nor must a new Lay of Varnish be applied, till the former, which ought to be very smooth and thin, be dried, yet not so as to be hard. Care must be taken to see, whether such Lay be stiffer, or of a deeper Colour: One must try to bring the Varnish, by Degrees, to a certain Temper, which only can render the Work firm, smooth, and clear. This Art is to be attained only by Experience. As the varnished, or japanned Works, must sometimes be set in moist Places, sometimes steeped in Water, and, in short, turned and placed in various Positions, they are seldom very large, like the Pillars fixed on Stone-Bases, wherewith the great Imperial Hall, the Emperor's Apartment, and other Chinese Buildings, are supported; which Pillars are not done over with true Varnish, but another Liquor, called *Tong-yew*, proceeding from

Varnish Tree.

THE second Tree, called *Tong-shu*, whence a Liquor is drawn not much differing from Varnish. So great is the Resemblance as to Figure, Colour of Bark, the Size and Fashion of the Leaves, the Shape and Make of the Nuts, to the Walnut-Tree, that at a small Distance you would take it for one. The Nuts are full of a thickish Oil, mixed with an oily Pulp, which they press. To make it fit for Use, they boil it with Litharge, and may mix it with any Colour at Pleasure. It is often laid, without any Mixture, on Wood, which it preserves against Rain; also on the Squares which form the Floors of Chambers: This makes them shine, and, if washed from Time to Time, they retain their Lustre. The Pavements of the Apartments, belonging to the Emperor and the Grandees, are done in this Manner.

WHEN they would adorn a Hall, a Chamber, or Closet, in a finished Manner, they first cover the Pillars and Wainscot with a Paste of Flax, Lime, or such-like Materials: When this is dried to a certain Degree, they with Brushes lay-on the Oil (mixed with the Colour they pitch-on, and boiled as usual) according to their Design. Sometimes they gild the Moldings, Carvings, and every Thing that is in Relief: But, setting-aside the Gilding, these Works scarcely yield in Beauty and Lustre to those wherein they employ the Varnish, called *Tsi*. As this Oil is cheap, and the Varnish pretty dear, the Merchants usually mix a great Quantity of the *Tong-yew* with the *Tong-tsi*; under

^a Forty Sous in the French.

^b Du Halde's China, p. 337.

^c The same; and Le Comte's Memoirs of China, p. 148. The Manner of applying the Varnish has been already described, p. 138.

Natural History.

Pretence, that a little of it is necessary to bring it to a Temper, and make it spread more easily. It is with this *Tong-yew*, that they make Cloth to keep-out Rain, like Oil-Cloth; but the Cloaths made of it can be worn only in the Northern-Parts. In short, the *Tong-shu* is one of the most useful Trees to be found in *China*, and would be of vast Service, if brought into *Europe*.

The Tallow-Tree.

THE Tallow-Tree, called by the *Chineses*, *U-kyew-mü*, is one of the most singular Trees in Nature, and to be found no-where but in *China*, being very common in *Che-kyang*, and *Kyang-fi*. *Martini* has given a pretty exact Account of it in his Description of the City of *Kin-wha*, in the first of those Provinces. This Tree, which he compares to our Pear-Trees, and is sometimes as tall as the larger Sort, has also a great Resemblance of the Aspin, and Birch-Tree, with respect to the Leaves, and long Stalks; but the Trunk and Branches are mostly shaped like our Cherry-Trees. The Bark is of a whitish Grey, somewhat soft to the Touch: The little Branches are long, flexible, and furnished with Leaves only from the Middle to the End; where they grow in a Sort of Tuft, but more small than elsewhere, and often turning at the Edges, so as to appear hollow like a Boat. These Leaves are of a dark Green, sleek on the upper-Part, and whitish underneath; very thin, dry, moderately large, and in Form of a Lozenge; only the Angles on the Side are rounded-off, and the End lengthened into a Point. They are joined to the Branches by long Stalks, dry, and small: The Ribs of the Leaf, as well as its Fibres, are round, dry, and slender. In the latter Season, that is towards *November* and *December*, they become red before they fall-off; as happens to the Leaves of the Vine, and Pear-Tree.

Its Fruit.

THE Fruit grows in Bunches, at the Extremity of the Branches, on a very short, woody Stalk: It is inclosed in a hard, woody, brown Capsula, or Husk, called *Yen-kyü*, a little rough, and of a triangular Figure; the Angles being rounded-off, much in the same Manner as those of the small Fruit, or red Berries of the Privet, or Prime-Print, vulgarly called *Priest-Cap*. These Husks, or Cases, commonly inclose three small Nuts, or Berries, each about the Size of a Pea, with a pretty hard Shell, and round, excepting on the Sides, where they touch, which is a little flat. Every Nut is inclosed with a thin Covering of white Tallow, pretty hard. The Stalk divides itself, as it were, into three small Strings, which pass through the Middle of

The Tallow.

the Fruit, between the three Kernels, in such a Manner, that the Ends of the Strings enter the upper-Ends of the Kernels, whereat they seem to hang. When the Husk, which is composed of six small, hollow, oval Leaves, begins to open, and fall-off, as it does by Degrees, the Fruit discovering itself, makes a very agreeable Sight, especially in Winter; for then these Trees appear covered-over with small, white Bunches, which at a Distance look like so many Nosegays. The Tallow that envelopes the Fruit, being broken-off into one's Hand, easily melts, and yields a greasy Smell, not much unlike that of common Tallow.

BEFORE the Fruit is quite ripe, it appears round. Some are defective as to Shape, and contain but one or two Nuts, or Berries. The Nut has within its Shell a Kind of small Kernel, about the Bigness of a large Hempseed, which is covered with a brown Skin, and affords a great deal of Oil for their Lamps.

OF this Tallow they make Candles, which are like the Segment of a Cone, and lighted at the broad End: The Wick is a little Stick, or hollow Reed, round which they wrap Cotton-Thread, or else the Pith of a Rush of the same Bigness: This Rush serves also for the Wick of Lamps. One End of the Reed, or small Stick, serves for fixing-on the Candlestick, which is made with a Point to enter into the Hollow. This Sort of Candle, besides being thick and heavy, readily melts, when touched with the Hand. The Light it gives is pretty clear, but a little yellowish; and as the Wick is solid, and changes, while burning, into a hard Coal, it is not easily snuffed, they using Scissars made for the Purpose.

IN order to separate the Tallow from the Fruit, they pound the Shell and Nut both together, and boil it in Water; skimming-off the Fat, or Oil, as it rises to the Top, which condenses like Tallow when it is cold. To ten Pound of this Grease, they sometimes put three of Linseed-Oil, and a little Wax, to give it a Body; whereof they make exceeding white Candles, though they also make red-ones, by mixing Vermilion with the Composition. *Du Halde* mentions elsewhere, that they dip the Candles into the Wax produced by the Wax-Tree; and that this forms a Sort of Crust about the Tallow, which hinders it from running.

NAVARETTE affirms, that this Tree always grows on the Banks of Brooks, as do the Willows in *Castile*: That it bears a Fruit about the Bigness of a Hazle-Nut, of a dark-green Colour:

^a *Du Halde's China*, p. 9. ^b *Magalhães* and *Navarette* call it *Quercus*. ^c *Le Camte* says it is smooth. ^d *P. 9*, he says, the Size of a Hazle-Nut. ^e The same Author says, it opens in the Middle, like a Chestnut. ^f *Du Halde*, as before, p. 319. ^g The same, p. 9.

Natural History.

When gathered.

Farther Account.

The Wax-Tree.

Wax, how produced.

That it blossoms about the Middle of *December*, and looks as white as Snow: That the Husk coming to drop, a white Substance, like Tallow, appears, which is gathered about the End of *December*, or Beginning of *January*: That the Candles made of it yield no ill Smell, and last much longer in Summer, than Winter ^a: That they cost Three halfpence a Pound ^b; but the Tallow bought-off the Tree is not half so dear. They adorn them with Paint, Silver, and Gold, like the Paschal-Candles of the *Romanists*: From the Dregs that remain, after making the Candles, they press an Oil, which serves for Lamps ^c.

LE COMTE says, the Branches of the Tallow-Tree are crooked, the Leaves shaped like a Heart, of a lively brisk Red ^d, its Bark smooth, the Trunk short, and the Head round, and very thick. The Rind inclosing the Fruit is divided into three Segments, which open when it is ripe, and discover three Kernels of the Bigness of a small Nut. This Mixture of White and Red, makes, at a Distance, the finest Prospect in the World: The Fields, where these Trees are planted, which is usually in a direct Line, and chequerwise, shewing afar-off like a vast Parterre of Flower-Pots. For want of the Art of purifying the Tallow, the *Chinese* make the Candles very awkwardly; so that their Smell is much stronger, their Smoak thicker, and their Light dimmer, than ours; which the Author attributes chiefly to the Stick used for a Wick ^e.

THE fourth extraordinary Tree, called *Pe-la-shu*, or the white Wax-Tree, is not quite so tall as the Tallow-Tree: It differs from it also in the Colour of the Bark, which is white; and in the Figure of the Leaves, which are longer than broad. A Kind of little Worms fasten on these Leaves, wherewith being covered, in a short Time they form Combs of Wax, much smaller than the Honey-Combs. This Wax is very hard and shining, and is considerably dearer than Bees-Wax. When these Worms are accustomed to the Trees of any District, they never quit them, but on particular Occasions; and when once they remove from a Place, they never return; so that others must be procured in their Stead, from the Merchants who deal in them ^f.

ACCORDING to *Magalhaens*, the Animal which produces the Wax, is no bigger than a Flea, but exceeding active and vigorous, piercing with extraordinary Swiftneſs, not only the Skins of Men and Beasts, but the Branches and

Bodies of Trees, where they lay their Eggs:

These being picked-out, and kept, in Spring turn to Worms. The best are those of *Shan-tong*, which the Inhabitants sell in *Hu-quang*; from whence comes the best Wax. At the Beginning of Spring, they lay these Worms at the Roots of the Trees: Up these they run, taking Possession of the Branches, and piercing to the very Pith, which by a peculiar Property they prepare, and turn to Wax as white as Snow. Afterwards they thrust it up the Holes they have made, to the Surface; where being congealed by the Air, it hangs like Icicles, till gathered by the Proprietors of the Trees, and made into Cakes for Sale. The Wax-Trees in *Hu-quang* are as large as Chestnut-Trees: Those of *Shan-tong* but small ^g.

To these four extraordinary Trees, let us add another, called *Ku-shu*: This resembles the Fig-Tree, in its Leaves and Branches, which consist of a light pithy Wood, and are covered like it with Bark. The Root commonly sends forth several Stalks, or little Trunks, like a Bush, and sometimes only one. The Trunk of some is strait, round, and nine or ten Inches thick. The Leaf is deeply indented, especially in two Places, whereby it becomes, as it were, divided into three Leaves, curiously hollowed on each Side. In Colour on both Sides, as well as the Contexture of the Fibres, it resembles the Leaf of the Fig-Tree, only it is larger, thicker, and rougher on the upper-Side; but the under-Side is very soft and downy. Some of them are not hollowed at all, and have the Figure of a longish Heart.

THIS Tree yields a Milk, made-use of by the *Chinese* in gilding. They draw it off in Shells put into horizontal, or perpendicular Incisions, made in the Trunk. In using it, they draw, with a Pencil, what Figures they please upon Wood, or any other Matter, and then apply Leaf-Gold, which sticks so firmly, that it never comes-off ^h.

THERE is another remarkable Tree, which partaking somewhat both of the Juniper and Cypress, is called *Tse-tsong*, that is, Juniper, and *Ywen-pe*, or Cypress. The Trunk, which is about a Foot and half in Circumference, sends forth Branches almost from the very Ground: These again emit a great many others, which stretching-out at some Distance from the Trunk, form a thick green Bush. The Tree is crowded with Leaves, some like Cypress, the rest like Ju-

Singular Trees.

^a This is contrary to what is found with our Candles. ^b *Magalhaens*, who describes this Tree almost in the same Words, differs in this Circumstance, saying, they cost not above Fourteen pence the Pound, if there be not some Mistake in the *English* Translation. ^c *Navarrete's Description of China*, p. 33. ^d He saw them, doubtless, in the latter Season, when they are of that Colour. ^e *Le Comte's Memoirs of China*, p. 99. ^f *Du Halde's China*, p. 9. ^g *Magalhaens's Relation of China*, p. 140, & seq. ^h *Du Halde*, as before, p. 320.

Natural History.

Odd Situation.

The Tree described.

niper; the latter being long, narrow, and sharp, with this Peculiarity, that they are disposed along the Boughs, or Twigs, in Rows, four, five, or six in Number: So that looking-on the Boughs from the End, they appear like Stars of four, five, or six Rays; the Leaves of the first Row covering those of the under Rows so exactly, that through the Spaces between, one may see distinctly to the Bottom of the Bough. These Boughs are found principally at the lower-Part of the Branches; for towards the Top you see nothing but Cypress-Branches, which are the more large and numerous of the two Sorts: Nature hath still formed a greater Variety, for some are half one, and half the other. In short, sometimes one beholds a few Cypress-Leaves grafted at the End of a Juniper-Bough; at other Times, some small Juniper-Bough shooting from the Bottom of a Cypress-Branch.

THE Bark of this Tree is somewhat rugged, and of a greyish brown Colour, inclining a little to the Red in some Places: The Wood of a reddish White, like that of the Juniper, with a Spice of Turpentine in it: The Leaves, besides the Smell of Cypress, have an aromattick Scent; but their Taste is tartish, and very bitter. The Tree bears small, round, green Berries, little larger than those of Juniper: The Pulp is of an Olive-green, and has a strong Smell. The Fruit is joined to the Branches by long Stalks of the same Nature as the Leaves: It contains two reddish Seeds, in the Shape of Hearts, and as hard as Grape-Stones. The Trunk of some of these Trees is tall and slender, having Branches nowhere but at the Top, which ends in a Point almost like the Cypress. There are others of the Dwarf-Kind, growing no higher than seven or eight Feet; but as their Trunk and Branches are crooked, and wrinkled, there is Reason to believe the Chinese stunt their Growth by cutting them. When the Tree is young all the Leaves are long, like those of Juniper; but, when old, they resemble the Cypress.

3. Of the Cotton, and Tea-Shrubs.

The Cotton-Shrub. Manner of growing: How cleansed. The Tea-Shrub. Song-lo Tea, its Qualities. Vũ-i, or Bohea, more preferable. Mau-cha, or Imperial-Tea: Other Sorts, their different Effects. Counterfeit Teas, in common Use. Pe-cul Tea. Vũ-i, or Bohea, when gathered: The Shrub described: Bears three Sorts of Fruit. Qualities of Tea. All the Sorts from the same Tree. Chinese Grafting.

ONE of the most useful Shrubs in all China, is that producing the Cotton. The Husbandmen, the same Day that they get-in their Harvest, sow it in the same Field, only breaking the Surface of the Ground with a Rake. After the Earth has been moistened with Rain, or Dew, there grows-up, by Degrees, a small Shrub, about two Feet high: The Flowers appear in August, being generally yellow, but sometimes red, and are succeeded by small Buttons, growing in the Shape of a Pod of the Bignonia of a Nut.

THE fortieth Day after the Appearance of the Flower, the Pod opens of itself, and cleaving in three Places, discovers three or four little Bags of Cotton, extremely white, and of the same Figure as the Cod of a Silk-Worm. They are fastened to the Bottom of the open Pod, and contain Seed for the following Year. It is then Time to get-in the Crop; but in fair Weather the Fruit is left exposed to the Sun two or three Days more, that so being swelled by the Heat, the Profit may be greater.

As all the Fibres of the Cotton are strongly fastened to the Seeds which they inclose, they make-use of a Sort of Wheel to separate them. This Engine consists of two very smooth Rowers, one of Wood, and the other of Iron, about a Foot long, and an Inch thick. They are placed so close together, that there is no Vacancy between; and while one Hand gives Motion to the first Rowler, and the Foot to the second, the other Hand plies the Cotton, which loosening by the Motion, passes on one Side of the Engine, the Seed remaining on the other. Afterwards they card, spin, and weave it.

THE Tea-Shrub is justly preferable in China to all others, because it is of the greatest Use and Benefit there. The Name of *Tha*, or *Tea*, comes from the corrupt Pronunciation at *Tswon-chew*, and *Chang-chew-fu*, in the Province of *Fo-kyen*: In all other Parts of the Empire they use the Word *Cha*; as do the *Portuguese*. There are many Kinds of it, which have different Names in different Provinces: However, it may be distinguished, by its Qualities, into four Sorts, viz. *Song-lo-cha*, *Vũ-i-cha*, *Pu-cul-cha*, and *Lo-ngan-cha*.

THE *Song-lo*, Green-Tea, is so called from a *Song-lo* Mountain in the Province of *Kyang-nan*, and *Di-Tea*, strict of *Whey-chew-fu*: It is neither high, nor of great Extent, but covered-over with these Shrubs, which are cultivated on its Sides, in the same Manner as at the Foot of the neighbouring Mountains. It is planted much in the same Manner as Vines, and they hinder its Growth

* Du Halde's China, p. 321.

† The same, p. 319, & seq.

Natural History.

in that Province; otherwise it would run-up to six or seven Feet, as it does in other Provinces to ten or twelve: It must also be planted anew every four or five Years, or else the Leaves will become thick, hard, and rough. The Flower is white, and shaped like a five-Leaf Rose. In Autumn, when it decays, there appears a Berry in the Form of a well-filled Nut, somewhat moist, and not ill-tasted. The *Song-lo-cha*, preserved several Years, is an excellent Remedy against many Distempers^a. The Leaves are somewhat long, the Infusion clear and green, when it is fresh, the Taste pleasant: It smells, as they say in *France*, a little of Violets; but this Taste is not natural, and the *Chinese* often assured the Author, that, to be good, it ought to have no Taste at all. This is what they commonly present at Visits, but it is exceeding corrosive; perhaps the Sugar they mix with it here corrects its Acrimony: But in *China*, where it is drank pure, too great a Use of it would be apt to spoil the Stomach^b.

Vu-i, or Bohea.

THE *Vu-i-cha*, or Bohea-Tea, as we call it, grows in the Province of *Fo-kyen*, and takes its Name also from the Mountain *Vu-i-shan*, situated in the District of *Kyen-ning-fu*, and two Leagues distant from the little City of *Tsong-gan-hyen*: This is the most famous Mountain in that Province: It is covered with a great Number of Temples, Houses, and Hermitages of the *Bonzas*, belonging to the Sect of *Tau-kyu*, which draw thither a great Concurrence of People.

THE better to compass their Design of making this Mountain pass for the Abode of the immortal Beings, they have conveyed Barks, Chariots, and the like, into the Clefts of the steepest Rocks all along the Sides of a Rivulet; and the common People believing it impossible that they could have been raised to such inaccessible Places, but by a Power more than human, look upon the Whole as a Prodigy. The Soil which produces this Plant is light, whitish, and sandy.

More greenish.

THE *Vu-i-cha*, and *Song-lo-cha* Shrubs, are of the same Height and Size, and cultivated in the same Manner: The only Difference between them is, that the Leaves of the latter are more long and pointed, give the Water a greenish Tincture, and Experience shews it to be somewhat raking. On the contrary, the Leaves of the *Vu-i-cha* are short, more round, somewhat blackish, and colour the Water yellow, without the least Harshness, or any Quality offensive to the weakest Stomach: Hence the *Vu-i-cha* is most generally used throughout the Empire. It is difficult to meet with any that is good in the Northern Provinces, where usually only the large-

a leafed Sort is sold; for the more yellow, tender, and fine the Leaves of both Sorts are, the more they are esteemed: Of these they make three Sorts, in Places where the Tea is gathered.

*The Tea-
Shrub.*

THE first is the Leaf gathered from the *Mau-cha*, Shrubs newly planted; or, as the *Chinese* express it, are the first Points of the Leaves: This they call *Mau-cha*, and is scarce ever used but in Presents, or to send to the Emperor. The second is of the Leaves more full-grown: This is what they sell by the Name of good *Vu-i-cha*. The remaining Leaves, which are allowed to grow to their full Bigness, make the third Sort, which is very cheap.

THERE is yet another Sort made of the Flower itself; but they who would have it must bespeak it, and pay an excessive Price. The Missionary-Geographers, having gotten a little of it by Means of the *Mandarins*, found no sensible Change in the Water, either as to Colour, or Taste, which is probably the Reason why this Tea is not used by the Emperor, or even in the Palace. The *Mau-cha* is the Imperial-Tea, and sold in the Places near the Mountains *Song-lo*, and *Vu-i*, for about two Shillings English^c a Pound.

UNDER these two Sorts of Tea, or *Cha*, we may comprehend all the rest, distinguished by different Names; as *Lü-ngan-cha*, *Hay-cha*, &c. The first has its Name from the City of *Lü-ngan-chew*, although the best Tea of this Kind is cultivated no-where but on the Sides of the little Hills belonging to the small City of *Ho-shan-hyen*, from whence they are distant about seven Leagues. The Missionaries having examined it on the Spot, found no Difference between it and the *Song-lo-cha*, either in the Figure of the Leaves, or the Manner of Cultivation. It tinges the Water of a different Colour, and, when fresh, appears not quite so rough or corrosive to the Taste: This may be attributed to the Difference of Soil, since in *Europe* Wines of the same Kind of Grape are found more or less rough in different Parts of the same Province.

THE *Chinese*, however, perceive the Effects of them to be very different. The *Song-lo* is hot and raking, but the *Lü-ngan* Tea is otherwise, and reckoned very wholesome. The *Hay-cha* comes from *Kan-chew-fu*, in the Province of *Kyang-si*, and differs, in no Respect, from the *Lü-ngan-cha*; so that it may be called a Species of the *Song-lo-cha*. It is the same with the other Sorts of Tea; for Instance, that which the Mongols in *Tartary* use, called by them *Kayel-cha*, or *Karcha*, consists only of Leaves, either

Their different Effects.

^a Du Halde's *China*, p. 10. Le Comte's *Memoirs of China*, p. 222.

^b Le Comte, as before, p. 223.

^c Forty or fifty Sols.

Natural History.

of the *Song-lo*, or *Vú-i-cha*, which grow to their full Size, and are mixed without any Sorting; because the *Chinese* think any Thing good enough for the *Tartars*, who cannot distinguish the coarse Tea from the fine, and commonly dilute it with Milk: Of this they make both an agreeable and a nourishing Liquor, which they take at all Hours.

Counterfeit Teas.

THE *Chinese* Traders often impose the Leaves of other Plants for Teas. Thus in the Province of *Shan-tong*, that which is sold by the Name of *Meng-ing-cha*, as admirable Tea, is no more than a Kind of Moss which grows on the rocky Parts of a Mountain belonging to a City of *Meng-ing-hyen*. It has a very bitter Taste, and this Quality of the true Tea, that when drank hot after Meals, it promotes Digestion.

In common Use.

THE same Sort of Tea is found in some Parts of the Provinces still more to the North: Though it be not made of Leaves, yet the Merchants call it *Cha-ye*, or *Leaves of Tea*. In those Countries where the Tea does not usually grow, the common People, who have not the nicest Palates, make-use of any Thing that resembles the Tea, either in Taste, or Effects, and regale themselves upon this coarse Stuff, which they frequently gather from Trees, that, having been long transplanted, degenerate, on Account of the improper Soil; and to make it much cheaper, they lay-in their Store when the Leaves are grown old, and become tough and large; which renders the Taste rough and insipid, although it produces the same Effects in those who take it, as the *Song-lo*, or *Vú-i-cha*.

Pe-eul Tea.

THE third Sort is named *Pú-eul-cha*, from the Village *Pú-eul*, which is situate in the Province of *Yun-nan*, and on the Borders of *Pegu*, *Ava*, the *Laos*, and *Tong-king*. It is gathered in the neighbouring Mountains, by the Natives, who will not suffer the Merchants to approach nearer than the Foot of them, where they receive the Quantity for which they bargained. According to these Merchants, the Trees which produce this Tea, are tall and bushy, planted without Order, and propagated without Culture: The Leaves are longer and thicker than those of the *Song-lo-cha*, and *Vú-i-cha*, and are rolled-up into a Kind of Ball, which they sell at a good Price. This Sort of Tea is common in the Provinces of *Yun-nan* and *Quey-chew*; but the Taste is disagreeable, though smooth. The Balls, when cut in Pieces, they throw, like other Tea, into boiling Water, to which it gives a reddish Tincture.

THE *Chinese* Physicians affirm this Drink to be wholesome, as by its Effects it seems to be. The Missionaries, and those who accompanied them in their Surveys, found it very good in

a slight Disorders on the Road. Its peculiar Virtues are, to cure the Colic, stop the Flux, and create an Appetite; but then it ought to be drank at least as strong again as Tea is commonly made.

THE Leaves of the second Kind, called *Thee Vú-i*, or *Vú-i*, are little, and inclining to black: They tinge the Water with a yellow Colour. The Taste is delicious, and even the weakest Stomach always agrees with it. In Winter it is to be used temperately, but in Summer one cannot drink too much. It is especially good in Sweating, after Travelling, Running, or any other violent Exercise. They give of it also to sick People; and those who have any Care of their Health, drink no other. When *Le Comte* was at *Siam*, he heard them often talk of the Flower of *Thee*, of Imperial *Thee*, and of several other Sorts of *Thee*, the Price of which was yet more extraordinary, than the Properties they ascribe to it: But in *China* he heard no such Thing.

THEY usually begin to gather the Tea in *March* and *April*, according as the Season is forward: They afterwards hold them in the Steam of boiling Water, to soften them again: So soon as penetrated by the Moisture, they draw them over Copper-Plates kept on the Fire, which dries them by Degrees, till they grow brown, and roll-up of themselves in the Manner we see them.

IT commonly grows in Valleys, and at the Foot of Mountains; the choicest springs in stony Soils; that which is planted in light Grounds holds the second Rank. The least valuable of all, is found in yellow Earth; but, in what Place soever it is cultivated, Care must be taken to expose it to the South: It gains more Strength by that Means, and bears three Years after being sown. Its Root resembles that of a Peach, and its Flowers white wild-Roses.

THE Trees grow of all Sizes, from two Feet to an hundred, and some are to be met-with that two Men can scarce grasp in their Arms. Thus far *Le Comte* gives from the *Chinese* Herbal. The following Remarks are those which he made during one Quarter of an Hour that he had to examine the Tree. He first saw it on the Side of a little Hill, entering the Province of *Fo-kyen*: It was not above five or six Feet high. Several Stalks, each an Inch thick, which joined together, and divided at the Top into many small Branches, composed a Kind of Cluster, much like Myrtle. The Trunk, though seemingly dry, bore very green Branches and Leaves: These Leaves were an Inch, or an Inch and half long, pretty strait-pointed, and indented round the Edges. The oldest, which seemed somewhat

The Tea- Shrub.

When gathered.

The Shrub described.

Natural History.

Bears three Sorts

Of Fruit.

Qualities of Tea.

white, were hard, brittle, and bitter. The new ones, on the contrary, soft, pliable, reddish, smooth, transparent, and pretty sweet to the Taste, especially after they had been a little chewed.

It being in September, he found three Sorts of Fruit. In the new Branches there were little slimy Pease, green without, and full of yellow Grains within. In others, the Fruit was as big as Beans, but of different Figures, some round, containing a Pea; others long, that contained two; some of a triangular had three, very like those of the Tallow-Tree Fruit. The first Skin inclosing these Grains is green, very thick, and somewhat even: The second white, and thinner, under which a third very fine Pellicle covers a Kind of Gland, or small Nut perfectly round, that sticks to the Bark by a little Fibre, from whence it derives its Nourishment. When this Fruit is young, it is somewhat bitter; but, a Day or two after it has been gathered, it withers, grows long and yellow, and wrinkles like an old Hazle-Nut; at length it becomes unctuous, and very bitter. The Author found also a third Sort of hard, old Fruits, the first Skin of which, between open and shut, shewed within a hard, brittle Husk, exactly resembling that of a Chestnut. On breaking it, he scarce found any Sign of Fruit, it was grown so dry and flat. In some this Fruit was reduced to Powder; others contained a little Nut quite dried-up, and covered with its first Pellicle.

AMONGST these Fruits, a great Number of them have no Germ, or Bud: These they call Females; such as have any may be sown, and produce Trees; but the Chinese do commonly make-use of Grafts to plant. The Author tasted the Bark of the Trunk and Branches: He likewise chewed some of the Wood and Fibres, which far from being bitter, left a Relish sweet like that of Liquorice; yet one does not taste it till some Time after.

As to the Virtues of Tea, Opinions differ much; some ascribing good, others bad Qualities to it. Many imagine, that it preserves the Chinese from the Gout, Sciatica, and Stone, because not subject to those Diseases. The Tartars, who feed on raw Flesh, suffer continual Indigestions so soon as they give-over drinking of it: In others, drinking it after Meals produces the same Effects. The Use of Tea cures some of the Vertigo: Others, after drinking it, sleep better; which argues that it is not proper to suppress Fumes. Many in France find it good

for the Gravel, Crudities, and Head-achs; nay, some pretend to have been cured by it of the Sciatica and Gout, in a very short Space. Others, on the contrary, have received no Manner of Benefit from it. Hence it is judged, that its good Qualities, whatever they are, may be found in most other Sorts of Leaves. A Pound of it costs no more than Three-pence in China.

CUNNINGHAM affirms, that the three Sorts of Tea, commonly carried to England, proceed all from the same Plant, and that nothing but the Season of the Year, and the Soil, makes the Difference. The Bohea, or *Vo-i*, is the very first Bud, gathered in the Beginning of March, and dried in the Shade. The Bing-Tea is the second Growth, in April; and *Sing-lo* the last, in May and June, both dried a little in Tatches, or Pans, over the Fire. He adds, that the Tea-Shrub being an Ever-Green, is in Flower from October to January, and the Seed ripe till September and October following; so that one may gather both Flowers and Seed at the same Time; but for one fresh and full Seed, there are an hundred good for nought. These, continues he, make-up the two Sorts of Fruit in *Le Comte's* Description of Tea. As for his other Sort, which he calls slimy Pease, they were nothing but the young Buds of the Flowers not yet open. Its Seed-Vessels are really tricapsular, each Capsula containing one Nut, or Seed; and although two or one Capsula only comes to Perfection, yet the Vestiges of the rest may be discerned. It grows in a dry, gravelly Soil, on the Sides of Hills, in several Places of the Island of *Chew-shan*, without any Cultivation.

THE same Author observes, that *Le Comte* is mistaken in saying, that the Chinese are Strangers to the Art of Engrafting, for he saw the Tallow, and other Trees, engrafted in the same Island. They do not slit the Stock, but cut a small Slice off the Out-side, to which they apply the Graft, cut sloping, to fit the Place; then bringing-up the Bark of the Slice over the Graft, they tie all together, and cover it with Straw and Mud, as is done with us.

4. Of the Trees bearing Flowers.

Flowering Trees. The Mo-lyen. The La-mwe. The Cha-wha. Several Species. Odoriferous Shrubs. The Jasmin and Sampagu. The Quey-wha: An excellent Flower. The Lan-wha. Common Flowers. Peonies. Provence

^a This must be owing to its attenuating Quality, for it is a great Thinner of the Blood and Juices. ^b *Le Comte's* Memoirs of China, p. 221, & seq. ^c The Author spells it *Folii*. ^d P. 96, of his Memoirs: But p. 225, he owns they do graft, as may be seen a little above. ^e Philof. Trans. Abridg. vol. 5. part 4. p. 180.

Natural History.

Roses. The Lyen-wha: Kind of Water-Lily. a
The Pe-tu. Vegetable Colours.

Flowering-Trees.

THE Flowering-Trees and Shrubs are very numerous throughout China, which, in this respect, has the Advantage of Europe, as the latter has of it in regard to Flowers which spring from Seeds and Roots. Large Trees are to be seen there, covered with Flowers; some having a perfect Resemblance of Tulips; others are like Roses; which, intermixt with the green Leaves, make a very beautiful Appearance.

The Mo-lyen.

AMONG the Trees of this Kind, there is one called *Mo-lyen*, as thick as the Small of one's Leg: Its Branches are slender, full of Pith, and covered with a red Rind, speckled with white Spots like a Filbert-Tree. The Leaves are not many, but very large, and broadest towards the Top. They are thin, and pretty dry: Their Ribs and principal Fibres covered with a fine whitish Down. They are joined to the Tree by Stalks, which spread towards the Bottom almost round the Branch; which may be said to proceed from it, as out of a little Tube, making an Elbow in this Place.

FROM amidst the Stalks rise little Buds of an oval Figure, covered with Down; which opening in December, become large Flowers, like the Mountain-Lily, composed of seven or eight Leaves full of long Fibres, of an oval Figure, and pointed at the Extremities. Some of these Trees bear yellow Flowers, some red, others white.

The La-mwe.

ANOTHER Tree, called *La-mwe*, has some Resemblance of our Bay-Tree, as to the Size and Figure, as well as Shape of its Branches. The Leaves grow opposite each other, by Pairs, on short Stalks. The greatest are almost as large as those of the common Laurel, but neither so thick nor dry; becoming less and less in Proportion to their Distance from the End of the Branch. In the Depth of Winter, there proceed from between these Leaves small yellow Flowers, of an agreeable Smell, not unlike that of the Rose.

The Cha-wha.

THE Tree called *Cha-wha* would also be a great Ornament for Gardens. There are four Kinds of it, which bear Flowers, and resemble the Spanish Laurel, in the Shape of its Top, the Wood, and the Leaves: These latter do not fall-off during the Winter. They are ranged alternately on each Side of the Branches, large as those of the Spanish Kind; but of an oval Figure, pointed at the Ends, and indented on the Edges like a Saw. They are also more thick and firm; being of a dark Green on the upper-Side,

a like the Leaf of an Orange-Tree, and yellow underneath, with pretty thick Stalks. Its Wood is of a whitish Grey, and very sleek: The Trunk, commonly, as thick as one's Leg.

At the Place where the Stalks join the Tree, there proceed Buds of the Bigness, Figure, and Colour of a Hazle-Nut. They are covered with fine white Hair, and have a Ground like that of Satin. These, in December, become Flowers, double, and of a reddish Colour, like small Roses. They are supported by a Calix, and grow from the Branch without any Stalks.

THE Trees of the second Kind are very high: Several Species. The Leaf is rounded at the End; and the Flowers large and red, intermixt with the green Leaves, make a very agreeable Shew. The Flowers of the two other Kinds are smaller and whitish. The Middle is full of slender Filaments, with each a yellow flat Top, like those in common Roses, and a small round Pistil in the Center; at the Bottom whereof is a little green Ball, which, as it grows, forms the Film, inclosing the Seed ^a.

THERE are Trees in some Parts, that are almost all the Year long laden with Flowers of a florid Carnation. The Leaves are small, like those of the Elm; the Trunk irregular, the Branches crooked, and Bark smooth. If Alleys were made of them, mixed with Orange-Trees, it would be the most pleasant Thing in the World: But the Chinese do not much care for walking ^b.

AMONG the Shrubs, *Du Halde*, (or his Correspondent) was not acquainted with above three or four Sorts; whose Flowers were odoriferous: Those called *Mo-li-wha*, are the most agreeable. The Shrub which bears them is easily propagated in the Southern Parts of China, where it grows to a pretty good Height: But, in the Northern Provinces, it never exceeds five or six Feet; although they take Care, in Winter, to keep them in Green-Houses made on purpose. The Flower has a great Resemblance of the double Jafamin, both in Figure and Colour; but the Scent is stronger, though no less pleasant. Its Leaf is entirely different, more nearly approaching that of the young Citron-Tree ^c.

JASMINs are very common. They plant them in the Nature of Vines, and look after them carefully; selling them in Nosegays. But this Flower is excelled by the *Sampagu*, which is famous in other Countries as well as China. They have them in Pots, and carry them from one Province to another to sell. There are wonderful Properties in the Root; and those very opposite: The Author was told, in *Manilla*, that

^a *Du Halde's China*, p. 12, and 320, & seq. as before, p. 12.

^b *Le Comte's Memoirs of China*, p. 158.

^c *Du Halde*,

Natural History.

The Quey-wba,

An excellent Flower.

The Lan-wha.

the Part which grows to the East is a mortal Poison, and that which grows to the West the Antidote ^a.

THE Tree that produces the Flowers called *Quey-wba*, very common in the Southern Provinces, and sometimes as tall as an Oak, is rarely seen in any of the Northern. These Flowers are small, differing in Colour, and have a very agreeable Odour. The Leaves resemble those of our Bay-Tree; which Resemblance is more easily discerned in the very high Trees, to be met with chiefly in *Che-kyang*, *Kyang-si*, *Yun-nan*, and *Quang-si*, than in the Shrubs of the same Kind. These little Flowers are ordinarily yellow, and hang on the Trees in such Clusters, that, when they fall, they quite cover the Ground. Their Scent is so agreeable, that the Air is perfumed at a great Distance. Some Trees bear four Times in the Year; new Flowers succeeding as soon as the old fall: So that they are frequently to be had, even in Winter.

NOT unlike this, if not the same, is that which *Navarette* describes to be a little yellow Flower, so sweet and fragrant, that he knew nothing in *Europe* to compare it to: Though very small, it may be perceived three Quarters of a Mile. He observes, that the Tree it grows-on, called *La-mo-li-shwi*, bears no other Fruit but it; that it blossoms in *January*; and the Flower continues some Months upon the Stalk; lastly, that the *Literati* and Scholars much esteem it; usually wearing it on the Lock of Hair that hangs behind. On this Occasion the Author observes, that the Women are so fond of wearing Flowers on their Heads, (either natural or artificial, of Gold and Silver) that they sow Mallows in their Gardens for the Purpose. This Friar saw one of three-score and ten, all bedecked with them, passing in Haste to a Neighbour's, at which, he owns, the Missioners could not forbear laughing, according to the *European* Custom; though the *Chinese* Example ought to have taught them better Manners.

THERE is yet a Flower called *Lan-wha*, or *Lan-wey-wha*, whose Smell is still more fragrant than either of the former; but it is not so beautiful. The Colour is commonly inclining to that of Wax. It is produced by a Sort of Plant, difficult to rear in any but the maritime Provinces. The most leafy, and charming Flowers, but entirely insipid, grow like Roses, on Trees and Shrubs, which are thought to be of the Peach and Pomegranate Kind: They are of a very bright Colour, but yield no Fruit. There is another

a Shrub which has still less Conformity with any of that Species among us, named, at *Pe-king*, *Wen-quang-shu*: For it has different Names in, at least, three different Provinces. Its Flower is white; the Leaves growing in Form of a double and sometimes a triple Rose. The Calix, or Cup, becomes afterwards a Fruit resembling a Peach, but quite tasteless. The Cells are filled with Kernels, or rather Seeds, covered with a cartilaginous and blackish Film ^b.

b As for the Flowers produced from Plants and Roots, *Le Comte* tells us, they do not deserve looking after. He adds, that they have none curious; and though many may be met-with like those in *Europe*, yet they cultivate them so ill, that one has much ado to know them ^c. It should seem, that this Author had not seen any Peonies, since *Du Halde* assures us, they are found in several Parts of *China*, much finer than the *European*; and, that besides the Variety of their Colour, they, in some Places, diffuse a most charming Fragrance. He adds, indeed, that they are the greatest Ornament of their Flower-Parterres; where one meets with no other Sort to compare with our Pink, Tulip, Ranunculus, Anemomy, and the like ^d. Yet *Navarette*, who values himself on having seen a great Variety of Flowers, assures us, that there is in *China* a Sort of Rose-Tree, in all Respects, like the *Provence-Rose*, which every Month puts-out new Flowers. ^{Provence-Rose.}

d That which the *Chinese* call *Mew-tan*, or *Queen of Flowers*, is certainly, says our Author, the most beautiful in the World, and ought only to be handled by Kings and Princes. Its Smell is very delightful, and it is thick of reddish Leaves; which will divert even Melancholy itself. He also observes, that one meets with abundance of Sun-Flowers, very fragrant Lilies, much celebrated by their Philosopher, and other Flowers common in *Europe*: That there are vast Multitudes of what are called *Cocks-comb*; which is very beautiful, and a great Ornament to Gardens ^e; but allows, their Pinks have little or no Scent.

f IN artificial Fish-Ponds, and often in the *The Lyons* Marshes, there grows a Flower called *Lyen-wha*, ^{wha,} in much Esteem with the *Chinese*. By the Leaves, the Fruit, and Stalk, it appears to be the *Nenuphar*, *Nymphaea*, or *Water-Lily* ^f; which is but little valued in *Europe*. But, by the great Care they bestow on it, the Flower becomes double. The Leaves, it is said, amount to an hundred; and the Colours are more lively, and in greater Variety, than with us. Where the Flower is

Common Flowers.

Common Flowers, Peonies.

Provence-Rose.

The Lyons wha,

^a *Navarette's Description of China*, p. 35.

China, p. 158. ^d *Du Halde*, as before, p. 12.

^b *Du Halde's China*, p. 12.

^c *Navarette*, as before, p. 35.

^e *Le Comte's Memoirs of*

Yet p. 79, this Author says, it differs much from the Water-Lily, as well in the Fruit, as the Blossom and Root. It is also called

Natural-History. single, the Cup, as in ours, has ordinarily no more than five Leaves; whereof the Pastil grows in Form of a Cone, and is divided, lengthways, into several Cells, which contain a very white Sort of Fruit larger than our Beans ^a.

THE *Lyen-wa* is found almost every-where in the Province of *Kyang-si*. Nothing can be more agreeable than to see whole Lakes all covered with its Flowers, which are cultivated every Year. The great Lords keep them in little Ponds, sometimes in great Vases filled with Mud and Water, which serve to adorn their Gardens, or Courts.

Kind of Water-Lily. THIS Flower, which shoots-up above the Top of the Water, the Height of a Yard, or Yard and an half, pretty nearly resembles a Tulip: It consists of a little Ball, supported by a small Filament, much like that which is found in the Lilly: Its Colour is either Violet, or white, or partly red, and partly white: The Smell is very agreeable: Its Fruit is of the Size of a Hazle-Nut, the Kernel whereof is white, and well-tasted. The Physicians prescribe it to nourish and strengthen People weakened by long Sickness: It is also very cooling in Summer. The Leaves are long, and float on the Water; they are fastened to the Root by long Strings, which the Gardeners make-use of to wrap their Ware in. The Root is knotty, like that of Reeds: Its Pith and Substance is very white. This Plant is esteemed all-over the Empire, every Part of it being of use; they even make Meal of it, which serves for several Occasions ^b.

The Pe-tsi. LE COMTE mentions a Flower, a Kind of *Nenufar*, called *Pe-tsi*: It grows under-Water, its Root being fastened to a white Matter, covered with a red Skin, that divides itself into several Heads, which, when fresh, taste like a Hazle-Nut. The *Chinese* assured him, that it softens Copper, if put into the Mouth with a Bit of it: But on Trial at *Hang-chew-fu*, where the *Pe-tsi* is much eaten; and at *Kya-hing-fu*, the Missioners found it to be a mere Fiction; and no Wonder, since the Juice of it is very mild, and seems to have no corrosive Qualities ^c. *Du Halde*, who ascribes the Brags-softening Fiction to the *Lyen-wa*, supposes the *Pe-tsi* to be a Species of it ^d.

Vegetable Colours. THE *Chinese* scarce employ any Thing else, but the Juices of Flowers, and Herbs, for painting Flowers and Figures on Satin, and Satin-Taffaties, whereof the *Chinese* make their Cloaths, Trimmings, and Furniture. These Colours, which penetrate the Substance of the Silk,

never fade; and as they have not a Body, they never peel-off. They seem to be woven-in very finely with the Ground of the Silk, though they are only painted in a very delicate Manner ^e.

5. Timber, and other useful Trees.

Forest-Trees, Oaks, Pines. The *Nan-mu*. *Tse-tau*, or *Rose-Wood*. The *Lung-ju-tsu*. *Tye-li-mu*, or *Iron-Tree*. The *Bambu*, *Rattan*, and *Sugar-Canes*.

THE Plains are so much taken-up with Rice, that there is scarce a Tree to be seen in them: But the Mountains, especially those of *Shen-si*, *Ho-nan*, *Quang-tong*, and *Fo-kyen*, are covered with Forests, containing large, strait Trees of all Kinds, very proper to be used in public Edifices, and especially for building Ships; such as Pines, Ash's, Elms, Oaks, Palms, and Cedars, besides several others little known in Europe ^f.

THE Consumption of Pine, or Fir, in Ships, Boats, and Buildings, is so immense, that it seems wonderful all the Woods are not destroyed. No small Quantity is spent in Firing ^g. In the Northern Provinces the same Tree is employed in building; and in the Southern Part, beyond the River, they ordinarily make-use of the *Sa-mu*.

BUT that of greatest Esteem among them is the *Nan-mu*. The Pillars of the Apartments, and ancient Halls of the Imperial Palace, are all made of it, as well as the Windows, Doors, and Beams. The *Chinese* look-upon it as a Wood that never decays. When a Person has a Mind, say they, to build a House, that may last for ever, he must use the *Nan-mu*. Hence, perhaps, it is, that Travellers speak of it as a Cedar: But the Leaves, at least such as the Missionaries have seen, are not at all like those of the Cedars of *Libanus*, as described by Authors who have seen them. This Tree is one of the tallest Sort, and very strait. Its Branches shoot directly upwards: They begin only at a certain Height, and terminate a-Top in Form of a Nosegay.

THE *Nan-mu*, however, comes far-short in Beauty of the Wood named *Tse-tan*, which at Court is called *Rose-Wood*. It is of a reddish Black ^h, streaked, and full of very fine Veins, which one would think were painted: It is besides fit for the finest Sort of Joinery-Work. The Furniture made of this Wood, is much esteemed all-over the Empire, and in the North-

^a *Du Halde's China*, p. 12.

^b The same, p. 79, & seq.

^c *Le Comte's Memoirs of China*, p. 101.

^d *Du Halde*, as before, p. 13.

^e The same, p. 14.

^f The same, p. 317.

^g *Navarette's Description*

of *China*, p. 34.

^h Perhaps this is the Ebony, which *Navarette* says grows in the Northern Parts, but not plentifully.

Natural History.
The Lung-ju-tsu.

ern Provinces, selling it at a greater Price than a that which is varnished ^a.

THE Tree, called *Long-ju-tsu*, has a Trunk, which is as large as our biggest Plum-Tree, and they cut it into Boards for common Uses. It divides, betimes, into two or three thick Branches, and these again into smaller. The Bark is of a reddish grey Colour, and spotted like the Filbert-Tree; but the Extremity of the Branches is knotty, crooked, rough, and full of Pith, like the Walnut-Tree. The Fruit is somewhat oval, and, when green, nearly resembles Cherries, both in Colour and Shape, as well as the Stalk; which last is green and stringy, extremely long, and divided into several Branches, each whereof has one of these Berries hanging at the End. The Skin of the Fruit, in some Places, is full of little red Spots, is pretty tough, and incloses a greenish Substance, which, when ripe, becomes like Pap: They use it in Winter to rub the Hands with, and prevent Chilblains. ^c

THIS Fruit has a very hard Stone, like a Cherry-Stone, but a little oblong, and indented with five, six, and sometimes seven Furrows. This Stone receives its Nourishment through a pretty large, round Hole, that grows straighter, as it approaches the inclosed Kernel, which is small, and covered with a blackish Skin, not so hard as that of the Kernel of an Apple ^b.

Tye-li-mû,
or Iron-Tree.

WITH REGARD to Strength and Firmness, there is, perhaps, no Wood comparable to that called *Tye-li-mû*, which the *Portuguese* render *Pao de ferro*, that is, *Iron-Wood*. This Tree is as tall as our large Oak, but differs from it in the Thickness of the Trunk, the Shape of the Leaves, the Colour of the Wood, which is darker, and still more in the Weight. The Anchors of their Ships of War are made of this Wood, and the Emperor's Officers, who accompanied the Missioners in their Passage to the Island of *Tay-wan*, or *Formosa*, pretended they were preferable to the Iron-Anchors belonging to the *Chinese* Merchantmen; but in this they must be mistaken: For the Flukes can never be sufficiently pointed, nor strong enough for taking sure Hold; and by making the Shanks twice as long as those of Iron-Anchors, they must be proportionably weak, be they ever so large.

The Bam-bû.

TO the useful Trees may be added the Cane, which the *Chinese* call *Chu-tse*, and *Europeans*, *Bambû*, whereof there are many different Kinds. It grows as high as most Trees, and, though it is hollow throughout, except in the knotty Parts, or Joints, yet it is exceeding hard, is capable of

sustaining great Weights, and, in some Places, ^{Roots, Plants} large Houses of Wood. It may be divided into small Splinters, or Strings, of which they make Mats, Boxes, and other curious Works. They likewise make Paper of it ^e, Pipes to convey Water, and several other Things ^d, particularly Household-Furniture; such as Tables, Chairs, Beds, Presses, Boxes, Chests, and whatever else they please. The Missioners found those Moveables at *Kanton*, ready-made in the Shops. A Bed cost Nine-pence, a Table Six-pence, the Chairs Four-pence halfpenny apiece, and so of the rest. These Canes are most common in the Southern Provinces; they are very fit for making Poles, or any Sort of Scaffolding ^e.

CHINA produces also the Rattan, and Sugar-^{Rattan, and} Canes. The first is very small, but strong, creeping along the Ground to the Length of eight hundred, or a thousand Feet ^f: And the Southern Provinces abound with the latter ^e.

6. Roots, Herbs, and Plants.

Herbs, Roots. *Pe-tsay*, a Lettuce. Onions. *Rhubarb*. *Fu-ling*, or *China-Root*, its Virtues. *Ten-se Root*. *Ti-whang Root*. *Hu-chu-u*. *The San-tsi*, its Virtues. *Tyen-wha Blue*.

THE meaner Sort of People in *China*, living, for the most Part, on Herbs, Roots, and Pulse, together with Rice, which is their ordinary Food, are very careful to cultivate their Kitchen-Gardens: Whenever the Season for one Thing is over, another, immediately, is planted, or sown; and by this Means they never suffer the least Spot of Earth to lie idle. They have great Variety of these Vegetables, many of which are found in *Europe*. The Seeds of Cabbage, Sorrel, Rue, and some other Plants, which are brought from the *Indies*, either die, or degenerate, in two or three Years. They have true Cabbages indeed, but they do not come to a Head: They have had Parsly for many Ages ^b, since it is found in their Books under the Name of *Shin-tsay*; but it has neither the Beauty, nor Sweetness of the *European*.

AMONG the Pot-Herbs, which we have not, ^{Pe-tsay, a} scarce any deserves a Place in our best Kitchen-Gardens, except one, called *Pe-tsay*, which is exceeding good: Some mistake it for the *Roman* Lettuce; but though its first Leaves have a Resemblance, it differs from it in the Flower, Seed, Taste, and Height. They are best in the Northern Provinces, where they are made tender by the

^a Du Halde's *China*, p. 10.

^b The same, p. 320.

^c They make Paper also of the Bark of the *Chu-*

kû, or *Ku-chû* Tree, described before, p. 159. ^d Du Halde, as before, p. 10. ^e Navarrete's Description of *China*, p. 34.

^f Du Halde, as before, p. 266.

^e Navarrete, as before, p. 32.

^b Navarrete, p.

32, says, they have neither Parsly, nor Burrage.

Natural History.

first Hoar-Frosts; the Plenty of them is almost incredible. In *October* and *November*, the nine Gates of *Pe-king* are stopped-up by Carts loaded with them, which are passing continually from Morning to Sun-set. The *Chinese* preserve them with Salt, or pickle them to boil with their Rice, which by itself is insipid.

In some of the Southern Provinces they cultivate Mallows, whose Leaves they boil, and dress with Fat, or Oil, as we do Lettuce, or Spinage, with Butter, this Plant being very wholesome, and laxative ^a.

Onions.

LE COMTE saw a Kind of Onions, which do not feed like ours; but towards the latter End of the Season their Leaves bear some small Filaments, in the Midst of which is a white Onion like that in the Ground. This, in Time, produces Leaves, and those another Head, and so on, which grow less and shorter, as they are farther from the Earth, in such exact Proportions, that one would think them artificially done ^b.

NAVARETTE says, the Cucumbers and Melons are not like ours, and that there are several Sorts of Pompions and Kalabasses: That there is much wild Marjoram, but no Rosemary: That there is planted Abundance of Tobacco, which is smoked throughout the Empire. He bought it dry for a Penny a Pound: But the *Japan* Tobacco is most esteemed ^c.

WITH REGARD to medicinal Plants, those which are most esteemed, or appeared most extraordinary to the Missionaries, when they travelled over the Provinces, are the following:

Rhubarb.

RHUBARB. This Plant grows in great Plenty both in *Se-chuen*, and the Mountains of *Shen-si*, named *Swe-shan*, or the Mountains of Snow, which extend from *Lyang-chew*, as far as *Su-chew* and *Si-ning-chew*. The Missionaries, while they were making the Map thereof, in *October* and *November*, frequently met whole Troops of Camels, loaded with Net-Bags full of Rhubarb. The Flowers resemble Bells scolloped at the Edges; the Leaves are long, and somewhat rough; the Inside of the Root, when fresh, is whitish; but, as it dries, assumes the Colour it has when it comes to us.

Fu-ling, or China Root.

THE Plant which their Physicians most use, is called *Fu-ling*, and by European Authors *Radix Xina* ^d, or *China Root*. It grows chiefly in *Se-chuen*: Its Leaves, which creep along the Ground, are long, and narrow: On the contrary, the Root grows to a great Thickness; and if we may believe the *Chinese*, sometimes to the Size of a Child's Head. The right Sort is

called *Pe-fu-ling*, or *white Fu-ling*, containing, in a Kind of Shell, a white pithy Substance, somewhat clammy. It differs from another Sort, much used also, because it is cheaper, and grows spontaneously in several Parts of *China*, where it is considered as a Species of wild *Fu-ling*. Some of the Missionaries affirm, that the *Pe-fu-ling* of *Shen-si* is a perfect Truffle: Its Colour is nearly green, but, when dry, it grows somewhat yellowish. It is not easy to determine in what Dis-temper it is most proper to apply this Plant, because the *Chinese* Physicians use it indifferently in all their Prescriptions ^e. It is an excellent Sudorific, and very proper to purge the Blood ^f.

Roots, Plants.

NAVARETTE observes, that there are two Sorts of the *China* Root; one perfect, which is fine and white: It grows in the Northern Provinces. The other a very imperfect Sort, they call it the *Root of the Earth*: It grows in *Fo-kyen*, *Quang-tong*, and other Southern Provinces: It is of a ruddy Colour: There is Abundance of it about the Fields, which any-body may gather. Both Sorts grow under-Ground, and have nothing above but some little Sprigs, with very small Leaves, by which it is found-out. The Author believes the first Sort, which bears four Times the Price of the latter, is never brought into *Europe*. He says, it is very dear in *India*, and that he had seen a Quantity sold at *Malakka* for eighteen Pieces of Eight, which in *China* did not cost two. The *Portuguezes* at *Ma-kau*, of late Years, fell into the Way of preserving this Root. The *Dutch* and *English* bring some of this Preserve, which is very delicious, into *Europe* ^g.

THE Root of the Plant named *Ten-se*, is not so commonly used, as the *Fu-ling*, but bears a greater Price. It is scarce, even in the Province of *Se-chuen*, where it grows between the thirtieth and twenty-ninth Degrees of Latitude; is of a hot Quality, and accounted an excellent Remedy for Disorders caused by cold Humours, and for all Sorts of Obstructions. Its Figure is singular, being very round on one Side, and almost flat on the other: Its flat Side is fastened to the Ground by Strings, especially by one pretty thick, which is in the Midst of the rest, and enters deeper into the Substance of the Root: From the Convex-Surface shoot divers Stems, which separating at the Bottom, each makes a little Nosegay; by these Marks it is easily distinguished. They commonly throw-away the Branches, and only keep the Root, which they boil, or at least make them pass the *Balneum Mariae* before they are sold.

Its Virtues.

Ten-se Root.

^a Du Halde's *China*, p. 13. ^b Le Comte's *Memoirs of China*, p. 100, & seq. ^c Navarette's Description of *China*, p. 32.

^d The *Portuguezes* call it *Pao China*. ^e Du Halde, as before, p. 13. ^f Le Comte, as before, p. 228. ^g Navarette, as before, p. 55.

Natural Hi-
story.
Ti-whang
Root.

TI-WHANG is another Root of a very beautiful Plant, which grows chiefly in the North-Parts of *Ho-nan*, in the District of *Wbay-king-fu*. At first Sight one would take it for a Kind of Liquorice, having a leguminous Flower, and crooked Pod; but after examining the Leaves, the Seed, and the Taste, it is hard to determine under what Species to range it. The *Chinese* find it good for strengthening the Stomach, and restoring the Loss of Vigour ^a.

Hu-chu-u. MR. CUNNINGHAM saw a very singular Root, called *Hu-chu-u*, in *Chew-shan*, to which they ascribed the Properties of prolonging Life, and turning grey Hairs into black, by drinking its Infusion for some Time; so that it sold from ten *Lyang*, or *Taël*, to one or two thousand a single Root; for the larger it is, the more efficacious; but the Author did not care to make so costly an Experiment ^b. This seems to be the *Yin-seng*, brought from Eastern *Tartary*; or else the *San-tsi*, which differs little from it, except in the Figure.

The San-tsi. THIS *San-tsi* is, of all Plants, next to the *Yin-seng*, most valued by the *Chinese* Physicians, who attribute almost the same Virtues to both; even preferring the *San-tsi* in Female Disorders, and in all Cases where there is Loss of Blood. It grows in the Province of *Quang-si*, and is to be found no-where but on the Tops of almost inaccessible Mountains. This is the Sort always used in Medicine, and the *Mandarins*, in those Parts, make Presents of it to their Superiors. A Kind of Goat, of a greyish Colour, is very fond of this Plant: Whence the *Chinese* say, the Blood of that Animal receives a medicinal Quality. It is certain, that its Blood ^c has surprizing Effects in Case of Hurts, and Contusions, as the Missioners frequently experienced, whose Servants having, by Falls from vicious Horses, been deprived almost of Speech and Motion, were, by applying this Remedy, in a Condition next Day to continue their Journey.

The Virtues. THE *Chinese* look-on this Plant as a Specific against the Small-Pox: Instances of its Success are frequent: The black and infectious Pustules become of a clear Red, as soon as the Patient has taken the Potion. Hence it is prescribed in several Diseases supposed to proceed from bad Qualities in the Blood: But this Plant is both scarce and dear; and, after all, one is not sure of having it pure and unmixed.

Tyen-wha. OF the numerous Simples and Drugs made-use of by the *Chinese* Mechanics, we shall only men-

tion the Plant named *Tyen*, and *Tyen-wha*, which is much used in all the Provinces. When it is steeped in Water, and prepared in large Tubs, or little Ponds, it yields a Blue fit for Dying. Those of *So-kyen* give a more beautiful Teint, and are most esteemed in that Sort of Painting which they call *Tan-mey* ^d.

SECT. III.

FOSSILS.

I. Mines and Metals.

China rich in Mines: Those of Silver: Gold Mines: Iron and Tin: White Copper: Red Copper.

MANY Mountains in *China* are famous for their Mines, containing all Sorts of Metals; for their medicinal Fountains, Simples, and Minerals. There you meet with Mines of Gold, Silver, Iron, Copper, Tin, white Copper, Quicksilver, Lapis Armenus, Cinnabar, Vitriol, Allum, Jasper, Rubies, Rock-Crystal, Loadstones, Porphyry, and Quarries of different Kinds of Marble ^e.

THE *Chinese* say, their Mountains are full of Gold and Silver; but that the Working of them hitherto has been hindered, from some political Views, perhaps, lest too great Plenty should make the People turbulent, or neglect Agriculture. The Emperor *Kang-hi* once gave Permission to some, who had the Care of his Domain, to open the Silver Mines, but caused them to give-over the Work in two or three Years; to prevent, it is thought, the Rabble from assembling together. Those who work the Silver-Mines in the Province of *Yun-nan*, which have always been open, were formerly considerable Gainers.

WITHOUT Doubt, *China* affords Mines of Gold also. What they have there is partly dug-out of Mines; but most of it is found among the Sands ^f, which the Rivers and Torrents roll from the Mountains in the Western Parts of *Se-chuen* and *Yun-nan*: This last Province is the richer of the two. A great deal is brought-in by the People called *Lo-lo* ^g, who possess the neighbouring Parts of the Kingdoms of *Ava*, *Pegu*, and *Laos*: But it is not very beautiful, possibly because not purified; and their Silver is still blacker, with the Alloy; but when refined by the *Chinese* Workmen, it becomes as fine as any other Silver.

^a Du Halde's *China*, p. 13. ^b Philof. Trans. Abridg. vol. 5. part 4. p. 182. ^c They make-use of the Blood of a Goat that has been hunted down. ^d Du Halde, as before, p. 13, & seq. ^e Le Comte's *Memoirs of China*, p. 93. Du Halde, as before, p. 317. ^f So also says *Navarette*, p. 32; and *Le Comte*, p. 93. ^g The *Lo-lo*, probably, dig a great deal of Gold from their Mountains, since they use to put a good Quantity of Gold-Leaves in the Collars of illustrious Persons, or those who deserved their Esteem. An Account of these People has been already given, p. 65.

Natural History. THE Chinese Gold, which is most beautiful and dear, is found in the Districts of *Li-kyang-fu*, and *Yang-chang-fu*: But as it is not coined, it is not employed in Trade as a Merchandize; yet the Demand for it in the Empire is not very considerable, because Gold is scarce ever used, except by the Gilders, and in some trifling Ornaments; for none but the Europeans have any Golden-Plate.

Iron and Tin. MINES of Iron, Tin, and other Metals for ordinary Use, must needs also be very numerous there, seeing they bear a low Price throughout the Empire. The Missionary Geographers were Witnesses of the Richness of a Tutenague Mine in the Province of *Hu-quang*, from whence, in a few Days, were drawn some Hundreds of Quintals.

White Copper. THE Mines of common Copper, which are in the Provinces of *Yun-nan*, and *Quy-chew*, have supplied the Empire with all the small Money that has been coined there for several Years past: But the most extraordinary Copper is that called *Tse-tong*, or white Copper, which is to be found, perhaps, no-where but in *China*, and that only in *Yun-nan*: It is white when dug-out of the Mine, and still more white within, than without. It appears, by numerous Experiments made at *Pe-king*, that its Colour is owing to no Mixture, for all Mixtures diminish its Beauty: When rightly managed, it looks exactly like Silver: To soften it, they mix a little Tutenague, or some such Metal with it; but those who would have it keep its fine Colour, in Place thereof add a fifth Part of Silver.

Red Copper. As for the Copper named *Tse-la-tong*, or the Copper which comes of itself, it proves to be nothing but red Copper washed-down from the high Mountains of *Yun-nan*, and found in the Channels of the Torrents, when dry.

MAGALHAENS observes, that an infinite Quantity of it is consumed in making their Cannon, Images, Statues, Money, Cups, and Dishes, some of which either on Account of their Antiquity, or the Workman, though otherwise very ordinary, are valued at several Hundreds of Crowns, sometimes above a thousand. The great Plenty of these Metals appears also from the Numbers of great Guns, to be admired for their Goodness, Size, and Workmanship, which are cast at *Ma-kau*; from whence several Places in the *Indies*, and even *Portugal* itself, is supplied with them.

2. Stones and Minerals.

Lapis Armenus: *Jasper*: *Rubies*: *Rock-Crystal*.

Marble Quarries. Load-stone, Leath for cutting it. The Hyong-whang. Coal-Mines. Pit-Coal. Salt, how dug-up, and prepared.

THE *Lapis Armenus*, or Azure, is found in several Parts of *Yun-nan*, and *Se-chwen*, differing in nothing from what is imported into *Europe*. It is also produced in the District of *Tay-tong-fu*, belonging to *Shan-si*, which furnishes the most beautiful *Yu-she*, a Kind of white Jasper, in all *China*. The white resembles that of *Agat*: It is transparent, and sometimes spotted, when polished.

THE Rubies sold at *Yun-nan-fu*, are of the right Sort, but very small. The Missioners know not in what Part of the Province they are found. One meets with some other Kinds of precious Stones at the same City: But they are brought from other Countries, chiefly by the Merchants of *Ava*, on which Kingdom the District of that Capital borders.

THE fairest Rock-Crystal is found in the Mountains of *Chang-chew-fu*, and *Chang-pu-hyen*, in the Province of *Fo-kyen*; in which Cities they make of it curious Seals, Buttons, and Figures of Animals.

THERE are in the same Province, as well as several others, Quarries of Marble, not inferior to the *European*, was it as well wrought. However, one meets at the Merchants with Variety of little Pieces, well-enough polished, and of a pretty good Colour; such as the little Tables named *Tyen-tsan*, which are very pretty, and spotted with divers Colours, representing very naturally Mountains, Rivers, and Trees: These are made of select Pieces of a Marble commonly dug in the Quarries of *Tay-li-fu*, and are sometimes seen to adorn the Tables at Entertainments.

FOR all this Store of Marble in *China*, yet one meets with neither Palace, Temple, nor any other Structure there, entirely built with it. Though the Chinese Houses are supported by Pillars, it does not appear, that they have yet made any of Marble, or once thought of employing the coloured Kind instead of Wood. Buildings even of the fine Freestone are rare in this Country, Stone being never used but in Bridges, and triumphal Arches.

THE Load-stone is found almost in every Province: It comes also to *China* from *Japan*; but the grand Use they make of it is in Physic: It is bought by Weight, and the best are not sold for above Eight-pence or Ten-pence an Ounce. *Le Camte* brought-over one with him an Inch and

^a Du Halde's *China*, p. 15, & seq. before, p. 16.

^b Magalhães's Relation of *China*, p. 135, & seq.

^c Du Halde,

Natural History.

half in Diameter, which, though but indifferently guarded, took-up eleven Pound Weight, and would raise fourteen or fifteen when rightly fixed. They are very dextrous in cutting them. The Author's was reduced to Form at *Nan-king*, in less than two Hours. The Engine for that Purpose is a plain one; and, if the *French* Workmen would use it, he says, they would abridge their Labour.

Leath for cutting it.

It is composed of two Jaumbs, three or four Feet high, arch-wise, with two Strings like a Setting-Iron: Is divided by a Board, which goes across, and closed by a Mortice in the Lee-board^a. On the Head of the Jaumbs is placed a little Roller, or Cylinder, an Inch and half in Diameter, which turns by Means of a String wound about the Middle, whose two Ends are tied to a Step, on which the Workman sets his Foot.

At one End of the Cylinder is fastened with Mastic, a thin, flat Piece of Iron, eight Inches Diameter, very round, and sharp at the Edge, which moves swifter, or slower, according as the Step is set high, or low. Mean Time the Workman applies the Load-stone in one Hand, and in the other some very fine wet Sand, which cools the Iron, and serves to cut the Stone: But because the Iron, in passing through the Sand, scatters it about with Violence, there is placed just under it a little semicircular Board, which receiving it, hinders it from flying into the Eyes of the Workman^b.

The Hyong-whang.

THE *Hyong-whang* is found in *Yun-nan*, and several other Provinces; even Northern ones, as *Shen-si*. It is not a Mineral, but a soft, yellowish Stone^c, sometimes spotted with black, easily formed into Vessels of all Kinds, which they tinge with Vermilion. It is affirmed to be an Antidote against Poison, and the *Chinese* Geographers recommend it as a grand Specific against malignant Fevers; but it is not used in the Cure of them in Places where it abounds.

No Kingdom, perhaps, in the World besides, has so many, and so rich Coal-Mines^d. The Mountains, especially those in the Provinces of *Shen-si*, *Shan-si*, and *Pe-che-li*, afford innumerable: Without some such Convenience, there would be no living in so cold a Country, where Wood for Firing is very scarce^e. *Magalhaens* observes, that the Pit-Coal, called *Mwi*, burned at *Pe-king*, is brought from certain Mountains two Leagues distant, which seem inexhaustible; having supplied both the City, and greater Part of the Province, for above four thousand Years past, though the very poorest People have Stoves heated with it^f. It is black, and found be-

Pit-Coal.

tween the Rocks in very deep Veins. Some, especially the common People, pound it, and wetting the Dust, make it into Lumps. This Coal is very difficult to light, but casts a great Heat, and is very lasting. It sometimes yields a very bad Smell, and will suffocate those who sleep near it, unless they keep close-by them a Vessel full of Water, which draws the Smoke in such a Manner, that at length it smells as disagreeably itself. It is universally used by all Sorts of People, and even in Wind-Furnaces for smelting Copper. But those who work in Iron find, that it makes the Metal hard.

PROVIDENCE has wonderfully supplied the

Western Parts of *China*, bordering on *Tartary*, so remote from the Sea, with Salt: For beside the Salt-Pits found in certain Provinces, there is, in other Parts, a Sort of grey Earth scattered up-and-down several Districts in Spots, containing between three and four Acres each, which yield a prodigious Quantity of it. The Manner of getting this Salt out of the Earth is remarkable: They make the Surface of the Land as smooth as Glass, with a little Sloping, that the Water may not lie on it; and when the Sun has dried it, so that it appears white from the Particles of Salt which are mixed with it, they take it up, and raise it in little Heaps, beating it very well, that the Rain may soak into it. Afterwards spreading it on large Tables, that are a little inclining, and have Ledges four or five Fingers high, they pour-on fresh Water; which dissolving all the Particles of Salt, carries them along with it into a large Earthen Vessel, whereinto it runs, Drop by Drop, through a little Tube. The Earth thus drained, being dried again, they reduce to Powder, and lay in the same Spot from whence it was taken; where, in seven or eight Days, it becomes impregnated, as before, with abundance of saline Particles, which are again separated from it in the Manner as above.

WHILE the Men are at this Work in the Fields, their Wives and Children are employed, in Huts built on the Place, in boiling the Salt-Water, in very large, deep, Iron-Basons, over an Earthen-Stove, with Holes made in it; in such Manner, that the Fire is communicated to all the Basons alike, the Smoak being carried-off by a long Funnel, in Form of a Chimney, at the End of a Stove. When the Water has boiled for some Time, it grows thick, and changes by Degrees into a very white Salt, which they stir incessantly with a large Iron-Spatula, till it is quite dry. In Places where Wood is wanting for this Purpose, the Defect is supplied with Reeds^g.

^a Or left Jaumb, we presume. The Translation here is very obscure. ^b *Le Comte's Memoirs of China*, p. 230. ^c See before, p. 53. ^d *Navarette*, p. 34, says, Pit-Coal is found in the Northern Provinces. ^e *Du Halde's China*, p. 16. ^f *Magalhaens's Relation of China*, p. 10. ^g *Du Halde*, as before, p. 317, & seq.

Natural History.

SECT. IV.

Birds and Fowl, Insects and Reptiles.

I. Birds and Fowl.

European Birds. *Catching wild Ducks. Bird-fighting. Chinese Falcon. Kin-ki, or Golden Hen. The Fong-whang. The Ki-lin. The Tung-wha-fong. La-ki, a surprising Bird.*

European Birds.

ALTHOUGH Peacocks and Turkeys are common in the Indian Countries, yet there are none in China but what come from abroad. Cranes are numerous; this Bird suiting with any Climate, cold or hot: They are easily tamed, and taught to dance: Their Flesh is reckoned very good eating.

THERE is abundance of fine Pheasants, whose Feathers are worth more than is given for the Bird, the usual Price being a Penny a Pound. Their Nightingales are bigger than the European, and sing to Admiration; as do likewise their Black-birds. Geese and Ducks are infinite. Kanton alone consumes yearly twenty thousand, besides other Fowl, Fish, and Butchers Meat.

Catching wild Ducks.

THESE, and other Water-Fowl, swarm on the Rivers and Lakes, especially wild Ducks: The Manner of taking them deserves mention. They put their Heads into the Shells of large Gourds, with Holes made to see and breathe through; then going naked into the Water, walk or swim so low, that nothing appears but the Gourds. The Ducks being accustomed to see Gourds floating on the Surface, and to play about them, approach them without Fear; when the Duck-Hunter taking them by the Feet, pulls them under-Water, to prevent their making a Noise, wrings their Necks, and fastens them to his Girdle, pursuing his Exercise till he has gotten a great Number.

NAVARETTE observes, that this is no very diverting Exercise, for they who do not understand it, would think that the Ducks, when hauled under-Water, are only diving for Food, as they do every Moment. He adds, that these Fowls are frequently boiled, and their Broth reckoned very nourishing: That they are very good roasted, and in Soupe; but incomparably better salted, and dried; for that they exceed Ham, and make an excellent Provision in either

a Sea, or Land-Journeys. It is difficult to distinguish the Wild from the Tame by the Taste.

THERE are certain little Birds in China in great Esteem: They are like Linnets, and bred in Cages, not to sing, but to fight together. Such as have been tried are of great Value. The Chinese are likewise very fond of Cock-Fighting: But this Diversion is more common in several Islands (particularly the Philippine) and Kingdoms of the East-Indies, where much Money is won and lost at it, as in some Parts of Europe.

WITH REGARD to Birds of Prey, that called *Chinese Hay-tsing* is the most remarkable, both for its Beauty and Rareness, being found only in the District of *Hong-chang-fu*, in *Shen-si*, and some Parts of *Tartary*. It is not inferior to our finest Falcons, but exceeds them in Bigness and Strength: It may be called the King of the Birds of Prey in *Tartary*, or *China*; for it is the most beautiful, sprightly, and courageous of all. As soon as any of them is caught, it must be carried to the Emperor, and afterwards committed to the Care of the Royal Falconers.

IN the Southern Provinces, as *Quang-tong*, *Kin-ki*, or *Golden-Hen*, and especially *Quang-si*, there are Parrots of all Sorts, in every Respect like those brought from America: They have the same Plumage and Docility for talking; but are not comparable to the Birds called *Kin-ki*, or *Golden Hens*, doubtless from their Beauty. These last are found in the Provinces of *Se-chwen*, *Yun-nan*, and *Shen-si*. There is no Bird in Europe that resembles them; the lively Red and Yellow, with a Plume on the Head, the Shadowing of the Tail, and the Variety of Colours in the Wings, together with a well-shaped Body, seem to give it the Preference to all other Birds: Its Flesh is more delicate than that of a Pheasant; so that, of all Birds in the East, this, perhaps, best deserves to be brought into Europe. This, probably, is that very beautiful Bird which *Navarette* says is met-with in the Province of *Shen-si*. He adds, that *Trigausius* used to say, the Tail-Feathers, which are extraordinary gaudy, are a Fathom in Length.

THE Chinese, not content with such Master-Pieces of Nature, have had Recourse to Invention for Birds. Of these the most remarkable are, the *Fong-whang*, and the *Ki-lin*. They relate a thousand Stories about them. The first must be the same Bird which *Navarette* fancies is our Eagle, and says, the Chinese call the Bird of the

^a *Navarette's Description of China*, p. 40, and 42. ^b The same Author says, they put the Fowl into a Bag, and walk out slowly again, that they may not disturb the rest. ^c *Du Halde's China*, p. 314. ^d *Me-thinks*, a very execrable, because a cruel one. ^e *Navarette*, as before, p. 40, & seq. ^f This, probably, is the Bird called in *Tartary*, the *Sbongar*, mentioned in the History of *Jenghiz Khan*. ^g *Du Halde*, as before, p. 15. ^h *Navarette*, as before, p. 40. ⁱ *Du Halde*, as before, p. 333.

Natural History.

Sun, (as he thinks) from what is commonly reported, that it looks full at the Sun. He adds, that when it appears, they say it denotes Good-luck; and that, according to their learned Men, one was seen at the Birth of their Philosopher *Confucius*. Their Books, continues that Author, tell us, the Body of it is like a Crane, the Neck like a Snake, the Tail like a Dragon's: That it never rests on any Tree, or eats Fruit: That there is a Male and Female (whence he concludes it cannot be the Phoenix^a, as some Missioners imagined;) and that they sing charmingly: Lastly, that the *Chineſes* take it for granted there is such a Bird, though no Man living in *China* ever saw one^b. *Du Halde* (from his Correspondents) assures us, that the *Fong-whang*, whose Figure is often painted, and set-off with a vast Number of Ornaments, never appears in any of the Cities, or Mountains, to which they have given its Name: Nor is it better known at *Fong-tſyang-fü* in *Shen-fi*, where they say it is, than at *Fong-whang-ching* in *Tartary*^c.

The Ki-lin.

THE *Ki-lin*, according to the *Chineſe*, is composed like the *Fong-whang*, of different Parts of Creatures: It has the Height and Chest of an Ox; the Body is covered with broad, hard Scales; it has a Horn in the Middle of the Forehead, with Eyes and Whiskers like those of the *Chineſe* Dragon. This Animal is the Symbol of the military *Mandarins* of the first Order^d.

The Tung-wha-fong.

THE *Chineſe* Geographers mention a little Bird, called *Tung-wha-fong*, which in Beauty even surpasses the *Fong-whang*. They say, that the Variety of its Colours is surprizing, and its Bill of a shining Red, inclining to Vermilion; and that its Life is of no longer Duration than the Flower *Ing-wha*: But at *Ching-tü-fü*, the Capital of *Se-chwen*, where according to them it breeds, the Inhabitants know nothing at all of this Bird^e.

La-ki, a surprizing Bird.

MAGALHAENS tells us of a Bird no less remarkable than any of the fabulous ones, if what he says of it be true. It is called the *La-ki*, or Bird with a Bill of Wax, the Bill being of that Colour. He saw one in the Emperor's Palace: It was as big as a Black-bird, but the Feathers of an Ash-Colour. This Bird learns whatever is taught her, with that Docility, that she does Things incredible: For all alone she will act a Comedy. She will put-on a Vizard, handle a Sword, a Lance, or Ensign made for her. She plays at Chess, and performs several Actions and Motions with such a lively Grace, as charms the Spectators^f. It is strange, that *Du Halde*, who

a has copied many Things from *Magalhaens*, should omit this extraordinary Bird, if he thought his Brother Jesuit, who seems to speak as an Eye-Witness, deserved to be credited.

Insects, Reptiles.

2. Insects and Reptiles.

Jew-ting, a Lizard. Curious Butterflies. Locusts. Bugs.

CHINA abounds with Insects and Reptiles, but not so much as the *Philippine* Islands, *India*, and other Places. There is among the latter, a Lizard of a singular Kind, called *Jew-ting*, *Pye-long*, or *Shew-kong*. They have given it the Name of the *Wall-Dragon*^g, because it runs-up Walls, and it is stiled the *Guard of the Palace*^h, or *Court-Ladies*, on the following Occasion. The Emperors used to cause the Wrists of their Concubines to be anointed with an Unguent made of the Flesh of this Animal, mixed with other Ingredients; the Mark of which (it seems) continues so long as they forbear having to do with a Man; but the Moment they admit of amorous Embraces, it disappears, and thus their Incontinence comes to be discovered. *Nawarette*, who believed this to be Fact, was of Opinion, that it would contribute vastly to the Security and Happiness of both Sexes, if all married Men had such an Ointment for their Wives; and Wives another for their Husbandsⁱ.

AN Account has already been given of that admirable Reptile the Silk-Worm^k, which is a Fountain of Wealth to *China*. Bees are also plenty, but they use the Wax in Medicine, not to burn. The Price no-where exceeds Twelve-pence a Pound^l.

THIS Empire would furnish our Virtuosi with a great Variety of Butterflies. Those of the Mountain *Lo-few-shan*, situated in the District of *Whey-chew-fü*, and Province of *Quang-tong*, are so much esteemed, that the largest and most uncommon Sorts are sent to Court, where they become a Part of certain Ornaments in the Palace: Their Colours are surprizingly diversified, and lively: They are much bigger than the *European*, and their Wings a great deal larger. In the Day-time they appear without Motion on the Trees, and are easily taken: In the Evening they begin to flutter-about, like our Bats, and some of them seem to be as large, when their Wings are extended. There are also beautiful Butterflies found in the Mountains of *Si-shan*, in the Province of *Pe-che-li*, which are likewise

Curious Butterflies.

^a *Du Halde* says, p. 15, that the *Fong-whang* should be the Phoenix, if there ever was such a Bird. ^b *Nawarette's* Description of *China*, p. 39, & seq. ^c *Du Halde's* *China*, p. 15. ^d The same, p. 333. ^e The same, p. 15. ^f *Magalhaens's* Relation of *China*, p. 320. ^g *Pye-long*. ^h *Shew-kong*. ⁱ *Nawarette*, as before, p. 39. ^k See before, p. 140. ^l *Nawarette*, as before, p. 53.

Natural History.
Locusts.

in Request; but small, and not to be compared a to the former ^a.

SOME Provinces of China, especially *Shan-tong* ^b, are often infested by Locusts, which in a short Time destroy the Hopes of the most plentiful Harvest. This dreadful Plague is thus described by a *Chinese* Author: "There appeared" (says he) a prodigious Multitude, which covers all the Sky, being so thick together, that their Wings seem to touch, and their Number so great, that in looking-up you would think you saw very high Mountains all green over your Head; and the Noise they make in flying, is like the Sound of a Drum." The same Author observes, that these Swarms do not appear but when the Inundations are followed by a very dry Year. Hence he pretends, that the Spawn of the Fish being left upon the Land, and afterwards hatched by the Heat of the Sun, produce this prodigious Number of Insects. At such unlucky Junctures, the wretched Husbandmen sweat all Day, underneath the burning Sky, to drive-away these Insects, with Clouts, which they spread-over their Crop: But sometimes this Evil does not extend above one League, the Harvest being very good in the rest of the Province ^c.

Bugs.

BUGGS swarm in some Parts of China: But what seems very odd, the Natives take a particular Delight in killing these loathsome Vermin with their Fingers, and then clapping them to their Nose ^d.

S E C T. V.

Game. No Lions. Large Tigers, commit great Ravages. The Horse-Tiger. Bears, Man-Bear. Small Stags. Kind of Dromedary. Odoriferous Roe-Buck, or Musk-Animal: Its Food Serpents. Odd Accident. Musk-Animal. Another Species. Chinese Unicorn. Lang and Pwey. The Jang. The Man-Ape.

Game.

CHINA abounds with Game. In several Parts of *Pe-king*, during Winter, are to be seen great Heaps of Animals, and Fowls of various Kinds, hardened by the Frost, and free from Corruption. There are a prodigious Number of Bucks, Does, wild Boars, Goats, Elks, Hares, Rabbits, Squirrels, Cats, Field-Rats, be-

sides Woodcocks, Quails, Geese, Ducks, Partridges, Pheasants, already mentioned, and several other Creatures not to be met-with in Europe, which are all sold exceeding cheap ^e. China likewise produces a great Number of No Lions. Fallow-Beasts of all Sorts, except Lions ^f, such as wild Boars, Tigers, Buffaloes, Bears, Camels^g, Rhinoceroses, &c ^h. Not to mention Oxen, Cows, Sheep, and the like domestic Creatures.

NAVARETTE observes, that the *Chinese* say there are no Lions in their Country, and that many believe there is no such Beast: Yet he observes, that if there be Leopards, as they affirm there are (besides Ounces) it is scarce possible but there must be Lions; but he adds, perhaps those they speak of are not Leopards.

THE Tigers are very numerous in China, Large Tigers, large, and fierce: It is incredible what Numbers ⁱ of People they kill, and devour every Year. A Christian *Chinese* affirmed to Navarette, that they ranged in Troops of a hundred or two together, at one Place on the Road, from *Kanton* to *Hay-nan*; so that Travellers durst not set-out, unless they were one hundred and fifty strong; and that some Years they had destroyed sixty thousand Persons. But the Author well observes, that if such Ravages continued, China would at length be dispeopled. He saw several, one bigger than a great Calf. A Friar of his own Order told him, that he had seen a Tiger leap a Wall as high as a Man; and catching-up a Hog, which weighed about an hundred Pounds, threw it over his Neck, leaped the Wall again with his Prey, and ran swiftly away to the Wood. As in Winter they come into the unwall'd Villages, near the Mountains, all Men are at home betimes, and secure their Doors. Navarette, who was some Days in a Place where they did so, observed, that they would come to the Door before it was dark, howling so dreadfully, that they were not without Fear in their Rooms: Yet the *Chinese* do not take much Pains to catch them, although they value the Skins ^j.

BUT what some *Chinese* Books mention of the Horse-Tiger, ought to be looked-on as mere Fiction. They pretend it differs from a Horse only in being covered with Scales, in having Claws which resemble a Tiger's, and in its bloody Disposition; which in the Spring makes him leave the Water to seize Men and Beasts:

^a Du Halde's China, p. 15. ^b See before, p. 49, and 53. ^c Du Halde, as before, p. 274. ^d Navarette's Description of China, p. 34. ^e Magalhaens's Relation of China, p. 143. Du Halde, as before, p. 314, & seq. ^f Lions are so much unknown to the *Chinese*, that the Pictures which they draw of that Animal have no Resemblance of it. Hence Magalhaens observes, p. 9, that Marco Polo, in affirming Lions are common in some Parts of China, must have mistaken them for Tigers; and this appears to be the Case, from his Description of the Lion in his second Book, and fourteenth Chapter. ^g Navarette observes, p. 37, that very good Elephants are bred in *Yun-nan*. ^h Du Halde, as before, p. 324. ⁱ Navarette, as before, p. 37, & seq.

Natural History.

Yet the Missioners, who travelled along the River Han, that waters the Territory of Syang-yang-fu, in the Province of Hu-quang, where they say these Animals breed, and crossed the frightful Mountains of Yun-yang-fu, could neither see, nor hear of any such Creature, notwithstanding all their Enquiry, and the Diligence of the Natives to shew them every Thing worth observing ^a.

Bears, Man-Bear.

BEARS there are in abundance. In the Province of Shan-tong, there is one Species of them, which the Chinese call Hyung-jin ^b, or Men-Bears: They walk upon two Legs, their Face is like a Man's, their Beard like a Goat's. They climb the Trees nimbly to eat the Fruit; they do no hurt, unless provoked; but in that Case they come-down furiously, fall-upon the People, and strike two or three Times with their Tongue, carrying-away with it all the Flesh it touches. This, says our Author, is very odd: Yet Friar Antony de Santa Maria, who saw these Animals, and John Balat, a Jesuit, who likewise had lived several Years in that Province, often affirmed it ^c. With Regard to this Man-Bear, Du Halde only observes, that what the Chinese report of the Jin-hyung, found in the Desarts of the Province of Shen-si, ought only to be understood of the extraordinary Bigness of those Bears compared with Men; just, says he, as the Animal called Ma-lu, or the Horse-Stag, is only a Species of Stags, which are near as high as the little Horses, named Chwen-ma, of the Provinces of Se-chwen and Yun-nan.

Small Stags.

THIS last Province also breeds a Kind of Stags, to be found no-where else; for their Size never exceeds that of ordinary Dogs ^d: The Princes and great Men keep them in their Gardens as Curiosities ^e. China abounds in Mules and Asses. It likewise affords many good and able Horses: Vast Numbers are continually brought thither from the Countries to the West, but they geld all. They have abundance of Pads, some very small, and finely shaped. Their Saddles differ somewhat from the Spanish ^f.

Kind of Dromedary.

BUT the most remarkable Quadrupedes to be met-with in China, are two. The first of these is a Kind of Camel, or Dromedary, no taller than an ordinary Horse, having two Bunches on his Back, covered with long Hair, which make a Sort of Saddle. The Bunch before seems to be formed by the Back-bone, and the upper-Part of the Shoulder-Bones, being bent backwards, not unlike the Bunch which the Indian Cows

have on their Shoulders; the other Bunch joins to the Buttocks. Its Neck is shorter than the common Camels, and much thicker, covered with thick Hair, as long as that of Goats: Some of them are of a yellowish Dun-colour; others again a little upon the red, and blackish in some Places. The Legs are not so long and slender, in Proportion, as those of other Camels; so that it seems more fit to carry Burdens.

THE other Animal is a Kind of Roe-Buck, called by the Chinese, Hyang-chang-tse, that is, the odoriferous Roe-Buck ^g. This Creature is found not only in the Southern Provinces, but even in the Chain of Mountains within four or five Leagues to the West of Pe-king. It is a Sort of Deer ^h without Horns, with Hair of a blackish Colour: Its Musk-Bag is composed of a very thin Skin, covered with Hair exceeding fine: The Flesh is good to eat, and served-up at the best Tables. When one of the Jesuits was serving his Mission in the Mountains above-mentioned, they brought him a Male and a Female, while they were yet warm and bleeding. He bought the Male for a Crown, Musk and all, (for some buy only the Flesh.) Hereupon they immediately cut-off the Bag, lest the Musk should evaporate, and tied the Top of it close with a Packthread. Those who would keep it out of Curiosity, dry it.

THE Musk is generated in the inward Part of the Bag, and sticks all round it like a Kind of Salt. There are two Sorts; but that which is in Grains, and called Tew-pan-hyang, is the most precious: The other, named Mi-hyang, is the least esteemed, because it is too small and fine. The Female produces no Musk, or at least the Matter which she yields, having the Appearance of Musk, has no Scent.

THE usual Food of this Animal, as he was told, is the Flesh of Serpents; which, though of an enormous Size, are easily killed by it: Because when they are at a certain Distance from the Roe-Buck, they are suddenly overcome with the Scent of the Musk, and grow so feeble, that they are not able to stir. This is certain, that when the Peasants go to cut Wood, or make Charcoal in the Mountains, they have no surer Way to preserve themselves from these Serpents, whose Bite is exceeding dangerous, than to carry-about them a few Grains of Musk: Being thus armed, they sleep quietly after their Dinner.

THAT which happened on his Return to Pe-

^a Du Halde's China, p. 14.

^b The same Author writes Jin-hyung.

^c Navarette's Description of China, p. 38.

^d Such Stags are found in some Parts of Guinea. See Vol. III. p. 715.

^e Du Halde, as before, p. 14.

^f Navarette, as before, p. 39.

^g Hyang signifies properly a sweet Smell; but it also implies odoriferous, when joined to a Substantive, for then it becomes an Adjective.

^h It is called, in this Place, the odoriferous Deer.

Natural History. *king*, was in some Measure a Confirmation, that the Flesh of Serpents is the principal Food of the Musk-Animal. Part of the Roe-Buck being dressed for Supper, one of those who was at Table happened to have such an Aversion to Serpents, that the bare mentioning of them, in his Presence, would make him extremely sick. As he knew nothing of what was reported of this Animal, and the Serpent, the Jesuit was very careful to say nothing at all about it, but observed his Countenance very attentively. He took some of the Roe-Buck, as others did, with a Design to eat it; but he had no sooner put a Bit in his Mouth, than he found an extraordinary Loathing at his Stomach, and would not touch any more, while the rest eat of it very heartily ^a.

Musk Animals.

NAVARETTE informs us, that these Musk-Animals abound in the Provinces of *Sben-fi*, and *Shan-fi*, where they are called *Sbe*. According to the *Chinese* Authors, it is like a small Deer in the Body, and the Hair resembles that of a Tiger, or Ounce: That when hard-pressed by the Hunters, it climbs the Rocks, where it bites-off the Musk-Bag which hangs at its Navel, thinking thus to save its Life by quitting the Treasure; but it soon dies. This Account, he tells us, agrees with the common Opinion.

Another Species.

THE same Author says, there is another Creature in the same Province, which differs from the former only in that it has no Bag ^b. He adds, that this Beast is sold to eat, and that the Missioners, in their Way by Water from *Peking* to *Kanton*, bought one. The Flesh, when roasted, had so strong a Scent, that it perfumed the whole Vessel, and in eating tasted like the highest Preparation of Musk: Yet he says the Smell did not give them a Disgust to the Meat; though if it had been stronger, there would have been no eating of it.

Chinese Unicorn.

THE *Chinese* talk, and write much concerning the Unicorn, which they account an Omen of Prosperity. They paint him very beautifully, and their Authors affirm, that he has the Belly of a Deer, the Feet of a Horse, and Tail like a Cow's: That he is of five several Colours, the Belly yellow; has only one Horn with Flesh about it, is two Fathom high, a merciful Beast, and the Emblem of Felicity: But all this, says *Navarette*, favours too much of the Fable of the Phoenix.

Lang and Pwey.

THE same Author speaks of two other strange Creatures, one called *Lang*, whose Fore-feet are

very long, and the Hinder short. The other *Pwey*, or *Poy*, with long Hind-feet, and short Fore-feet. As neither Kind can walk by itself, the two join ^c, making, as it were, one Beast, which moves-about by Means of the long Feet. The *Chinese* call miserable poor Wretches, who cannot live by their own Industry, *Lang-poy*, to signify, that they want some Assistance to get their Bread.

Fish.

THERE is yet a third extraordinary Beast, *The Jang*, called *Jang*, found in the Mountains of the Province of *Nan-king*: It is shaped like a Goat, has Ears and Nose, but no Mouth, and lives upon the Air ^d. It must be observed, that *Navarette* does not relate these Things as an Eye-Witness, but from the Books and Discourse of the *Chinese*, though he seems to believe all as Fact. *Du Halde* tells us, that the Missioners were not able to procure an exact Knowledge of the rare Animals, which the *Chinese* pretend are to be met with in the Mountains of this Empire. He adds, that what they relate of some has such an Air of Fable, as not to deserve mention. As to the *Sin-sin*, continues he, by the Account which is given of it all-over *Se-chwen*, it seems to be a Kind of Ape: They say it is as large as a middle-sized Man, and has a greater Resemblance of the human Species, than other Apes, both in its Actions, and in the Facility with which it walks on its Hind-feet ^e.

The Man-Ape.

SECT. VI.

Salt, and Fresh-Water Fish.

Plenty of Fish. Fish-Spawn, Traffic. River-Porpoise. The Armour-Fish. The Meal-Fish. Sort of Bream, and Cod. Salt-Fish. The Yellow Fish. The Golden Fish: Their Nourishment: Full of Sport: Their Shape and Beauty: How kept, and managed: Properest Food: Very prolific: Farther Remarks concerning them. The Hay-seng, a hideous Fish. Petrified Crabs.

CHINA is stored with Fish. The Rivers, *Plenty of Fish.* Lakes, Pools, and even Canals, are full of all Sorts supplied from thence: Nay, they abound in the very Ditches, made in the Middle of the Fields, to preserve the Water, for supplying the Rice. These Ditches are stocked also with the Spawn of Fish, which yields a great Profit. In the great River *Yang-tse-kyang*, not far from the City *Kyew-king-fü*, in the Province of *Kyang-fi*,

^a *Du Halde's China*, p. 15, and 324, & seq.

^c But the Author does not say in what Manner, nor can it well be conceived how they should join for the Purpose, unless one threw his Fore-Legs, and the other his Hind-Legs, over the Back of his Companion; which is manifestly impracticable. ^d *Navarette's Description of China*, p. 38, & seq. ^e *Du Halde*, as before, p. 14.

Natural History.

Fish-Spawn Traffic.

River Porpoise.

The Armour Fish.

The Meal-Fish.

a prodigious Number of Barks meet every Year to buy Fish-Spawn. About *May* the People of the Country dam-up the River for nine or ten Leagues together, in several Places, with Mats and Hurdles (leaving only Room enough for Barks to pass) in order to stop the Spawn, which they know how to distinguish at first Sight, though the Water is scarce altered: With this Water mixed with the Spawn, they fill several Vessels to sell to the Merchants, who transport it in their Barks into divers Provinces, taking Care to have it stirred-up from Time to Time. This Water is sold by Measure to such as have Fish-Ponds, and Pools belonging to their Houses: In a few Days the young Fry begin to appear in little Shoals, which being small, and almost imperceptible, are sown with Lentils (that grow in the Marshes) or Yolks of Eggs, much in the same Manner as domestic Animals are nourished in *Europe*: They preserve the large Fish by Means of Ice; and filling great Boats with them, carry them as far as *Pe-king*. The Profit often amounts to an hundred Times the Expence; for the common People live much on Fish. The Canals are supplied with Fish from the Rivers and Lakes: Several others come from the Sea, advancing a great Way up the Rivers; sometimes those of the largest Size are caught in Places above an hundred and fifty Leagues from the Coast ^a.

In the *Yang-tse-kyang*, above sixty Leagues from the Sea, are seen Porpoises, called *Kyang-chü*, or the *River Hog* ^b. They are lesser than those of the Ocean, but scud along in Shoals with the same Leaps and Evolutions as in the open Sea ^c. In short, there is scarce any Sort of Fish in *Europe*, but what is to be met-with in *China*, as Lampreys, Carps, Soals, Salmons, Trouts, Sturgeons, &c. besides a great many others of an excellent Taste, quite unknown there: But the Missioners were so employed in settling the Geography of Places, when they surveyed the Provinces, that they had not Time to enquire into the various Species of them. They only took Notice of a few more remarkable than the rest: One is called *Chü-kyä-yu*, that is, the *Armour-Fish*; because its Back, Belly, and Sides, are covered with sharp Scales, placed in strait Rows, one over another, much like Tiles on the Roof of a House. It weighs about forty Pound, is an admirable Fish, exceeding white, and tastes not unlike Veal.

In calm Weather, they catch another delicate Sort, which they name the *Meal-Fish*, because of its extraordinary Whiteness; and the black Pupils of its Eyes are inclosed with two Circles,

resembling very bright Silver. There are such prodigious Shoals of them in the Sea, near the Province of *Kyang-nan*, that they commonly take four hundred Weight of them at one Draught of the Net. *Fish.*

ONE of the best Sorts of Fish *China* affords, *Sort of* resembles a Sea-Bream: It is caught in the fourth *Bream*, and fifth Moon, and commonly sold for a little more than a Farthing a Pound, whereof it weighs five or six; and for about twice as much, twenty Leagues up the Country, where it is carried. When this Fishing-time is over, there comes from the Coasts of *Che-kyang* large Barks, loaded with another Kind of fresh Fish, resembling *Newfoundland Cod*: It is incredible what a *And Cod*, Consumption there is of them, in the proper Season, along the Coasts from *Fo-kyen* to *Shan-tong*, besides the prodigious Quantity that is salted in the Country where they are caught. The Plenty of this Fishery appears in that they are sold at a very low Price, notwithstanding the Merchants are at great Expence to procure them; for they must first buy a Licence of the *Mandarin* to trade, then hire a Bark, buy the Fish as soon as it is caught, and lay them in the Hold on Beds of Salt; by which Means the Fish *Salt-Fish*, is transported into the most distant Provinces, even in the hottest Season.

THERE is likewise brought a surprizing Quantity of other Salt-Fish from the Sea-Coast, from the sixth to the ninth Moon. In the Province of *Kyang-nan*, one meets with very large Fish, which coming out of the Sea, or *Yellow River*, throw themselves into vast Plains covered with Water: But Matters being so ingeniously contrived, that the Water runs-off as soon as the Fish are entered, they are left on dry Land, and taken without Difficulty, salted, and sold to the Merchants, who load their Barks with them at a very cheap Rate.

IN the River *Yang-tse-kyang*, over-against the City *Kyew-kyang-fü*, where it is above half *The Yellow*, a *Fish*. League broad, they catch all Sorts of excellent Fish; and, among others, one called *Whang-yu*, or the *Yellow-Fish*. It is of an extraordinary Size (some of them weighing upwards of eight hundred Pound) as well as an exquisite Taste, and perfectly firm: They are caught only at certain Seasons, when they come out of the *Tong-ting-hü*, called also the Lake of *Jau-chew*, into this River ^d.

THERE is in the same River, near *Nan-king*, a famous Fishery for Shads, called *She-yu*, in the Months of *April* and *May*; and at another Place, a good Way from thence, there is such Plenty of this Sort of Fish, that they often carry

^a Du Hald's *China*, p. 19, and 315.

^d The same, p. 315.

^b See before, p. 139. a.

^c Du Hald, as before, p. 354.

them

Natural History.

The Golden-Fish,

them to *Tsong-ming*, a neighbouring Island, where a they are sold exceeding cheap.

BUT the most remarkable Fish, is the *Kin-yu*, or *Golden-Fish*: These are kept, either in little Ponds, made for that Purpose, wherewith the Houses of Pleasure, belonging to the Princes and great Lords, are embellished; or else in Basins, which are more deep than wide: They chuse the least that can be found, because esteemed most beautiful, and a greater Number may be kept of them.

THE prettiest of them are of a curious Red, speckled, as it were, with Gold-Dust, especially towards the Tail, which is forked with two or three Points: Some are of a Silver Colour, others white, and some spotted with Red^a. Both Sorts are extraordinary lively and active, delighting to play on the Surface of the Water; but then they are so tender, that the least Impression of Air, and even any violent Shaking of the Vessel, will kill great Numbers of them.

Their Nourishment,

THOSE bred in Ponds are of various Sizes: Some are bigger than the largest Pilchards^b. They teach them to rise-up to the Top of the Water at the Noise of a Clapper, which the Person uses who feeds them. According to all Accounts, the best Way to preserve them, is to give them nothing in Winter: It is certain they do not feed them for three or four Months at *Pe-king*, while the very cold Weather lasts: What they live-on in the mean Time, under the Ice, it is not easy to determine, unless they find little Worms in the Roots of Herbs, which grow at the Bottom of the Ponds; or the Roots themselves, being softened by the Water, become proper Food for them. Frequently to prevent their being frozen, they are taken into the Houses, and kept the whole Winter in a Chamber, often shut-up in a China-Vessel, without being fed at all. Towards Spring they are put into the Basins again. The greatest Lords delight in feeding them with their own Hands, and spend some Time to observe their nimble Motions, sporting in the Water.

Full of Sport,

THIS Fish, at least the prettiest of them, are caught in a Lake, in the Province of *Che-kyang*, near the City of *Chang-wa-hyen*, in the District of *Han-chew-fu*, and at the Foot of a Mountain called *Tfjen-king*: But as this Lake is small^c, it is not likely that all the Golden-Fish come from thence, which are seen in the Provinces of *China*, particularly those of *Quang-tong*, and *Fo-kyen*, where this Species may be easily propagated^d.

ACCORDING to *Le Comte*, these Fish are commonly the Length of one's Finger, proportionably thick, and finely shaped. The Male is of a beautiful Red, from the Head more than half-way down the Body, and the remaining Part, together with the Tail, is gilded; being accompanied with such a bright and dazzling Lustre, that our best Gildings fall vastly short of it. The Female is white, the Tail, and some Part of the Body, having a perfect Resemblance of Silver.

Fish.

Their Shape, and Beauty,

b Their Tails are not smooth and flat, like those of other Fish, but form a Sort of Tuft, thick and long, which adds a particular Beauty to them.

THEY are kept in a very large and deep Basin, at the Bottom of which there is commonly put an Earthen-Pan, turned upside-down, with Holes in it, for them to retire from the Sun in hot Weather, for they are exceeding tender.

THE Water is changed three or four Times a Week, but in such a Manner, that the fresh runs-in, while the stale runs-out, that the Basin may never be dry: They likewise strew on the Surface certain Herbs, which keep the Water always green and cool. When they are obliged to remove the Fish from one Vessel to another, to avoid handling them (for those which are touched die soon after, or decay) they take them up by Degrees with a small Net, the Mouth of which is fastened round a Hoop, and the Threads woven so close together, that they have Time to put them into fresh Water before the old runs-out. The Author observed at Sea, that every Time the Guns were fired, or Pitch and Tar melted, some of them expired. Besides they live upon almost nothing: However, from Time to Time their Feeders throw-in small Bits of Paste; but the best Thing for them are Waters, which soaked, make a Kind of Pap they are extremely fond of.

How kept, and managed,

Proper Food,

c In hot Countries they multiply exceedingly, provided the Spawn, that swims upon the Surface of the Water, be duly taken-away; for otherwise they would devour it. Being placed in a particular Vessel exposed to the Sun, it is kept there till the Heat animates the young Fry. They are at first quite black, which Colour some always retain; but the rest change, by Degrees, to red or white, Gold or Silver. The Gold and Silver begin to appear at the End of the Tail, and extend more or less towards the Middle of their Bodies, according to their respective Natures^e.

Very prolific,

THE following Informations were obtained by

^a They lose their Lustre when dark, as we have observed by some brought over to England. ^b They scarce ever exceed a Finger's Length, and one of the better Sort sells for three or four Crowns. ^c Not above two hundred Acres in Compass. ^d *Du Halde's China*, p. 215. ^e *Le Comte's Memoirs of China*, p. 113. *Du Halde*, as before, p. 375, & seq.

the

Natural History.

Farther Remarks.

Concerning them.

the Missioners from the *Chinese*, who deal in these small Fish, and get their Livelihood by breeding and selling them.

1. ALTHOUGH they are commonly no longer than one's Finger, some grow to the Length and Thickness of the largest Herrings.

2. It is not the red or white Colour that distinguishes the Male from the Female; but the latter are known by several small white Spots about their Gills, and little Fins that are near them; and the Males, by having these Places bright and shining.

3. THOUGH the Tail is commonly in the Shape of a Tuft, yet often it is like that of other Fish.

4. BESIDES small Balls of Paste, they give them the Yolks of Eggs boiled hard, or else lean Pork dried in the Sun, and reduced to very fine Powder. They sometimes put Snails into the Basin where they are kept; their Slime, which sticks to the Sides of the Vessel, being excellent Food for these little Animals, who struggle for it. They are also very fond of little reddish Worms, found in the Water of some Reservoirs.

5. THEY seldom multiply after they are shut-up in these Vessels, because they are too much confined. In order to breed, they must be put in Reservoirs, where the Water runs, and is deep in some Places.

6. THE Water drawn-out of the Well, to fill the Vessel where they are kept, ought to be left to settle five or six Hours, otherwise it would be too crude, and unwholesome.

7. WHEN you perceive the Fish spawning, which happens about the Beginning of *May*, you should scatter Grass upon the Surface of the Water, that the Spawn may cling to it; and when you perceive the Spawning is over, or that the Males cease to follow the Females, the Fish must be removed into another Vessel, that the Spawn may be exposed in the Sun for three or four Days; and at the End of forty or fifty Days the

Water must be changed, because the small Fry begin then to appear distinctly ^a.

BUT this Kind of Fish is not more beautiful, than those, called *Hay-seng*, are hideous and ugly: They are, however, the common Diet of the *Chinese*, and make a Dish in almost every Meal: They are seen floating on the Coasts of *Shan-tong* and *Fo-kyen*. The Missionaries took them at first for so many inanimate Lumps: One which the *Chinese* Mariners caught, by their Orders, swam in the Basin wherein it was caught, and even lived there a pretty while. The Natives having always told them, that this Animal had four Eyes, and six Feet, and that in Figure it resembled a Man's Liver, they examined it very carefully, but could discover only two Places, which seemed to be Eyes, by the Signs of Fear it shewed when they moved their Hands before those Parts: Indeed, was every Thing that serves it to move with, to be looked-on as Feet, one might reckon as many as there are little Pimples, resembling Buttons, all-over its Body. It has neither Prickles, nor Bones, and dies the Moment it is squeezed. A little Salt will preserve it, in which it is conveyed to all Parts of the Empire: It is accounted a great Dainty by the *Chinese*, but did not appear so to the Missioners ^b.

LE COMTE tells us, that in the Isle of *Hay-Parified nan*, there is a certain Lake or Fountain, whose Water petrifies Fish, and that he brought-over Craw-Fish which were so far changed into Stone, that the Claws and Body of them were very hard, solid, and little differing from Stone ^c. The Missioners who surveyed the Empire, on the Authority of the Natives, deny there is any such petrifying Lake in that Island ^d: But seem to acknowledge, that there is a Kind of Sea-Crabs, (found between the Coasts of *Kau-chew*, in the Province of *Quang-tong*, and the Isle of *Hay-nan*) which are subject to Petrefaction without losing their natural Shape. They add, that they are very proper in burning and acute Fevers ^e.

^a Du Halde's China, p. 316, & seq.

^b The same, p. 20.

^c Le Comte's Memoirs of China, p. 112.

^d See before, p. 60. c.

^e Du Halde, as before, p. 20.



BOOK II.

A Description of Korea, Eastern Tartary, and Tibet.

CHAPTER I.

GEOGRAPHICAL OBSERVATIONS, and HISTORY of KOREA.

By Jean-Baptiste Regis, Jesuit.

INTRODUCTION.

ALTHOUGH Korea is only a Kingdom a tributary to *China*, yet lying at the Extremity of *Asia*, and our Method being to proceed from East to West, we shall give an Account of it before we come to treat of that Part of *Tartary*, immediately subject to the *Chinese* Empire.

Memoirs of Korea,

OUR Memoirs relating to this Country are very scanty, but few Ships of *Europe* having at any Time touched on its Coasts, and scarce any Inhabitants of the West ever landed to get any Information from the Natives. We meet, indeed, with a Relation of some *Dutchmen*, who, as we are told, sailed thither from an Island called *Quaelpert*, and lived, for some Time, on Shore: But how far the Author deserves Credit, must be submitted to the Reader, on comparing what he says with the Observations, which we have placed before it. These were communicated by *Regis*, one of the Missioners concerned in making the Map of the Empire, and an Abstract published by *Du Halde*^a. The Jesuit was not in *Korea* himself, he only traversed the Northern Borders, extending from Sea to Sea; the other three Sides being surrounded by Water. By this Survey the Notion which long obtained, that *Korea* was an Island, is found to be an Error.

Very few, and scanty.

THE Author of the Memoirs had his Informations for the Inland Parts from a *Tartar* Lord, who was sent as Envoy from *Kang-hi*, to the King of *Korea*, but was too much confined to make many considerable Remarks. On this Occasion, it may not be amiss to cite the Words of *Regis*. "The Ambassadors of *Korea*, as they represent a tributary Prince, meet with very little Respect, and do not take Place even of the *Mandarins* of the second Order. They are at first confined to their House, and when they are permitted to go abroad, they are surrounded with Spies, under the Appearance of Attendants. The *Tartar* Lord, continues the Missioner, informed us, that he was under no less Restraint himself in *Korea*, and that he was continually watched by those who instantly conveyed to Court every Word he spoke, by Means of Boys placed conveniently along the Streets^b."

SECT. I.

GEOGRAPHICAL OBSERVATIONS.

Name and Extent. Map of Korea, how far correct. Chief Rivers, Nations, and Provinces. Capital City. Great Wall of Korea. The Inhabitants: Their Habit. Marriages and Burials. Language: Religion: Governors. The King tributary. Punishments mild. Soil and Commodities. Korea once contiguous to *Pe-che-li*. Reasons to support this Conjecture.

KOREA is called by the *Chinese*, *Kau-li*, and sometimes in their Books, *Chau-tsyen*; and, by the *Manchew Tartars*, *Solbo*. It has had other Names, at different Times, which are not material. This Kingdom is bounded on the North by the Eastern, or *Manchew Tartars*: On the West by the *Chinese* Province, named sometimes *Lyau-tong*, at other Times *Quan-tong*; separated from *East-Tartary* by a wooden Palisado, called by the *Chinese*, *Mu-teu-ching*, or the wooden Wall; and by the Sea on the East and South. It

Name and Extent.

^a To be found in the second volume of the *English Folio* Edition of his Description of *China*, under the Title of *Geographical Observations on the Kingdom of Korea*, extracted from the Memoirs of P. Regis, with an Abridgment of the *Korean History*. ^b *Du Halde's China*, vol. 2. p. 377.

extends

The Geogra-
phy.

Map of Ko-
rea,

How far
correct.

Chief Ri-
vers,

extends from thirty-four to forty-three Degrees of Latitude; and its greatest Breadth, from East to West, is six Degrees.

A Tartarian Lord, whom the Emperor had sent thither, attended by a Mandarin of the Mathematical Tribunal, brought from thence the Map of the Country, which hangs in the Royal-Palace. He went as far as the Capital, and measured, by a Line, the Way to it from *Fong-whang-ching*. East of this City, which stands at the East-End of the Palisado of *Quan-tong*, is the present Western Border of *Korea*: For after the *Manchews* had subdued the *Koreans*, which was before they attacked *China*, it was agreed, that a certain Space should be left uninhabited, as a Boundary betwixt them, which is marked in the Map by pricked Lines. The Missioners found the Latitude of this City forty Degrees thirty Minutes and twenty Seconds: And its Longitude, from the Meridian of *Peking*, appeared by their Geometrical Measures, to be seven Degrees forty-two Minutes East.

As the Author, and his Assistants, had no Opportunity of viewing either the Sea-Coast, or inward Parts of the Kingdom, they do not vouch the Map for compleat, but only give it as the best that has been yet published. The whole Northern Limits, where *Korea* is broadest, and so far as they travelled on the West, having been measured geometrically, and their Latitudes fixed, they made-use of these Helps for reducing the other Parts to their proper Longitude. Moreover, by the Tartar Lord's Measurement of the Road from *Fong-whang-ching*, and the Latitude of the Capital of the Kingdom, they were enabled to proportion the Distances of other Places in the Map. This Latitude was found by the *Chinese* Mathematicians to be thirty-seven Degrees thirty-eight Minutes and twenty Seconds, which is distant from the Northern-Boundary five Degrees and a half: So that a few Observations on the South and East-Sides would serve to adjust the Situation of *Korea* tolerably well.

THE most considerable Rivers of this Peninsula, are the *Ya-lu*, and *Tu-men*, called by the *Chinese*, *Ya-lu-kyang*, and *Tu-men-kyang*; but in the Map by the *Manchew* Names, *Ya-lu-ula*, and *Tu-men-ula*; *ula* and *kyang* signifying each, in its particular Language, a River. They both rise-out of the same Mountain, one of the highest in the World, named by the *Chinese*, *Chang-pe-shan*, by the *Manchews*, *Shan-alin*, that is, the ever-white Mountain. The one runs West, and the other East: They are both deep, somewhat rapid, and of exceeding good Water. The

Course of the other Rivers, which we have not seen, are marked according to the *Korean* Measures.

THIS Country was formerly inhabited by various Nations, the principal whereof were the *Me*, the *Kau-kyu-li*, and the *Han*; the last of which were subdivided into the *Ma-han*, the *Pyen-han*, and the *Chin-han*; all which were at last united into one Kingdom, called *Chau-tsyen*, or *Kau-li*.

KOREA is divided into eight Provinces, which contain forty *Kyun*, or grand Cities^a; thirty-three *Fu*, or Cities of the first Rank; fifty-eight *Chew*, of the second Rank; and seventy *Hyen* of the third Rank. The first Province is in the Center of the Kingdom, and named *King-hi*, or the Province of the Court. 2. The Eastern, *Kyang-yuen*, or the Source of the River, was anciently the Country of the *Me*. 3. The Western, called *Whang-hay*, or the Yellow-Sea, includes Part of the old *Chau-tsyen*, and Country of the ancient *Ma-han*. 4. The Northern, *Ping-ngan*, the Pacific, was formerly Part of the Kingdom of *Chau-tsyen*. 5. *Tsven-lo*, the Southern, was the Residence of the *Pyen-han*. 6. The South-Western, *Chu-sin*, that is, the Faithful and Pure, is the ancient *Ma-han*. 7. The North-Eastern, *Kyen-king*, or the Happy, was the ancient Dominion of the *Kau-kyu-li*; and the South-Eastern, *Kin-shan*, was formerly the Country of the *Chin-han*.

THE Capital is named, in the Map, *King-ki-tau*, according to the *Koreans*: But the *Chinese* call it *Kong-ki-tau*, because they think the Word *King* of too much Dignity to be applied to any Court but their own; nor do they think it lawful to stile other Sovereigns *Tyen-tse*, or *Van-swi*, which Epithets they appropriate to their own Monarchs.

THE Houses, in this Kingdom, have but one Story: They are ill-built, in the Country of Earth, and in the Towns commonly of Brick^b. Their Cities are generally built and walled in the *Chinese* Manner: But the great Wall raised by the *Koreans*, as a Defence against the *Tartars*, of *Korea*, is much inferior to that of *China*, and for ninety Years past has been almost entirely ruinous; for they first felt the victorious Arms of the *Manchews*^c.

THE *Koreans* are generally well-shaped, and of a mild and tractable Disposition: They are Lovers of Learning, and fond of Music and Dancing. The Northern Provinces produce the stoutest Men, and the best Soldiers.

THE *Koreans* were so well-regulated by the Law of *Ki-tse*^d, that Theft and Adultery were

^a This should seem to be a Mistake for Districts. no Beds.

^c Du Halde's *China*, vol. 2. p. 376, & seq.

^b P. 382, he says, they are wretched, and that they use

^d Mentioned hereafter in the History.

DESCRIPTION of KOREA.

321

The Geography.

Crimes unknown to them, they never shut their Street-Doors in the Night; and although the Revolutions of Government have made them deviate a little from their primitive Innocence, yet they may still be justly looked-on as a Pattern to other Nations: But they abound with loose Women, and the young Men and Maids have frequent Meetings ^a.

Their Habit.

THEY dress as the *Chinese* did, under the *Tay-ming* Family, in a Gown with long and wide Sleeves, a high square Cap, a Girdle, and Boots of Leather, Linen, or Satin ^b. They generally wear Fur-Caps, and brocade Cloaths. The Women put Edging, or Lace, both upon their upper and under Petticoats. The Quality usually dress in purple-coloured Silk; and the *Literati* are distinguished by two Feathers in their Caps. On public Occasions, their Cloaths are richly adorned with Gold and Silver. Their Arms are Cross-Bows, and long Sabres, without Ornaments.

Marriages and Burials.

They never take Physic. They marry without making nuptial Presents, or using any Ceremony. The Princes and Princesses of the Blood are always matched together, and the Grandees follow the same Rule in their Families. They keep their Dead three Years unburied, and wear Mourning for their Parents three Years, but for Brothers only three Months. When the Bodies are interred, they place, by the Side of the Grave, the Cloaths, Chariots, and Horses of the Deceased, and in general every Thing they were fond of while alive, which are carried-off by those who accompany the Funeral ^c.

Language, Religion.

THEIR Language is different from the *Chinese*, but their Characters are the same, and both Nations use Interpreters. They have a very great Esteem for the Doctrine of *Confucius*, but little Respect for the *Bonzas*, none of their Pagods being allowed in the Towns ^d. Yet a few Pages after, the Author says they observe the Religion of *Fo*. He adds, that they are naturally superstitious, and abhor to deprive any Creature of Life; are moderate in eating and drinking, and use Plates and Dishes.

Government.

THE Learned apply themselves chiefly to Music. Every three Years they have an Examination of Doctors, Bachelors, and Masters of Arts; and those who are appointed Ambassadors are examined by the Tribunal of Ministers. The King possesses no Lands as his own Property, and every one has so much allotted him in Proportion to the Number of his Family.

The King tributary.

HE sends an Ambassador yearly to receive the

Chinese Almanack. Upon his Demise the Emperor commissions two Grandees to confer upon his Son the Title of *Quy-vang*, or King: And when this latter is apprehensive of Contention after his Death, he nominates an Heir to the Crown, whom he desires the Emperor to confirm. The Prince receives the Investiture upon his Knees, and makes Presents to the Commissioners, which are settled, besides about eight thousand *Lyangs* ^e in Money. After this an Ambassador is sent from *Korea* with the Tribute, who knocks his Forehead against the Ground before the Emperor: Nor does the Royal Consort assume the Title of Queen before the Emperor has granted it ^f. The *Mandarins* very much affect an Air of Gravity, and their Salaries are paid in Rice.

THEIR Punishments are gentle. Crimes capital, in other Countries, are punished by Banishment into the neighbouring Islands; but those who are guilty of abusive Language to their Parents, are beheaded. Petty Criminals are bastinadoed on the Back, and then discharged. When a Person is to be punished, a Sack is thrown over his Head, reaching to his Feet, with Design to conceal his Shame, and have him the better in their Power ^g.

THE Frontiers of *Korea*, so far as *Regis* saw, were very well cultivated, after the Manner of the Southern Provinces of *China*; and the *Tartarian* Envoy informed him, that the Country abounded with all the Necessaries of Life ^h. Although the Surface be mountainous, it is fertile, especially the Provinces of *Ching-ting*, *King-shang*, and *Tsuen-lo*. The chief Commodities of this Kingdom are Cotton-Paper, which is strong and lasting, and of a higher Price than any in *China*; the famous Plant *Jin-seng*, Gold, Silver, Iron; the Gum of a Tree resembling a Palm-Tree, with which whatever is varnished seems to be gilt; Hens with Tails three Feet long, little Horses three Feet high, mineral Salt, with Sable and Castor Skins. Of the Grain Paniz they make Wine ⁱ.

IN the Abridgment of Chorography, intitled *Korea once Quang-yu-ki*, it is remarked, that the City of *Chau-tsyen*, where *Ki-pe*, hereafter mentioned, resided, is in the Territory of *Yong-ping-fu*, a City of the first Rank in the Province of *Pecheli* in *China*. Supposing this true, *Regis* thinks it reasonable to conclude, that the ancient *Chau-tsyen* ^k, and *Korea*, were contiguous, and not separated by a Gulf till many Ages after: For it is

^a Du Halde's *China*, vol. 2. p. 381, & seq. ^b The same, p. 377. ^c The same, p. 381, & seq. ^d The same, p. 377. ^e Or Ounces of Silver, 28 Shillings and Eight-pence each. ^f Du Halde, as before, p. 381. ^g The same, p. 382. ^h The same, p. 376. ⁱ The same, p. 382. ^k King-ki-tau, the Capital, is by some Travellers and Geographers named *Chau-tsen*.

*The Geogra-
phy.*

not to be imagined, that a Prince would fix his Residence out of his own Dominions, especially if divided from them by a wide Sea. This Conjecture will appear the more probable, if it be considered, that when the Emperor Yu, about three thousand Years ago undertook to drain the Waters, which had overflowed the flat Country^a: He cut a Passage through a Mountain in the Southern Borders of *Shan-si* and *Shen-si*, to make Way for the *Whang-ho*, which separates those Provinces, and there forms a Cataract not inferior to those of the Nile.

*To Pe-che-
li.*

THENCE he conducted it through *Ho-nan*, and following its Channel along *Pe-che-li*, drained the Lake *Ta-lu*, into which the *Whang-ho* formerly emptied itself. This Lake overflowed all that Country, which now includes the Districts of *Shun-te-fu*, *Chau-chew*, and *Shing-chew*, in the same Province. At last to break the Rapidity of this River, he divided it into nine Channels, which some imagine were again united before it disembogued itself into the Sea, at the Foot of the Mountain *Kye-she-shan*, which then made a Promontory: But whether the united Streams, or only the main Channel made its Exit there, it is certain, says the Author, that since the Time of Yu, the *Whang-ho* has strayed far from its ancient Course; for instead of discharging itself into the Sea, as it did formerly in Latitude forty Degrees, it now falls into the River *Whay-ho*, a little above *Whay-ngan-fu*, in *Kyang-nan*, about Latitude thirty-four Degrees. It is likewise observable, that the Mountain *Kye-she-shan*, which was formerly united to the Territory of *Yong-ping-fu*, is now five hundred Li^b distant in the Sea from this City: So that the Sea gaining on the Land by Degrees, hath at last overflowed all this Tract of Ground.

*Reasons to
support*

It is true, that the *Chinese* History makes no mention of this extraordinary Change of the Course of the *Whang-ho*, nor of this Overflowing of the Sea. But, says the Author, when Alterations on the Earth's Surface are brought about insensibly, and without alarming Nature, they easily escape the Observation of History, the Difference that happens during the Life of any one Man being not at all perceptible. To confirm this Conjecture by a parallel Instance. When *Shin-tsun-chong* was sent Ambassador into the Country North of the *Whang-ho*, in travelling by the Mountains of *Tay-bang-shan*, he observed, that the Shells of the Rocks were filled with Shells and Beds of Gravel; whence he supposed that the Sea had formerly washed the Foot of these Mountains, though they are now a thou-

*This Conjec-
ture.*

a sand Li^c from it. *Chu-ven-hong*, indeed, rather believes, that the *Whang-ho* anciently ran this Way. But although it would be easy to refute his Opinion, yet if it only appears doubtful, whether this great Extent of Country was formerly covered by the Sea, it is sufficient to shew, that nothing can be inferred from the Silence of the *Chinese* History in Cases of this Nature^d.

*Regis-
1720.*

SECT. II.

The History and Revolutions of Korea.

Korea subject to China. Race of Ki-tse. Another Dynasty. The Kau-kyu-li: They invade China. Invaded in their Turn: Attack Lyau-tong: Their King assassinated: His Death revenged by the Emperor: Defeats the Koreans: Takes their King. The Koreans tributary: Defeat the Ki-tan: Disoblige the Emperor: Pay him Homage. A new Revolution. The Koreans invaded by the Japanese. The Chinese come to their Assistance. Ping-yang described: Taken by Assault. The Chinese worsted. Japanese quit Korea. An amorous Ambassador. Chinese King of Japan. The War renewed. Chinese Treachery: Japanese Bravery. King of Korea's Petition to Kang-hi.

THE Koreans were subject to the *Chinese* from the Time of Yau^e, who began his Reign two thousand three hundred and fifty-seven Years before Christ, till the Tyranny of Ta-kang, of the *Hya* Dynasty (who came to the Crown an hundred and sixty-nine Years after) forced them to revolt. Kye, who ascended the Throne one thousand eight hundred and eighteen Years before the Christian Æra, made them pay Tribute: But they soon rebelled against his oppressive Sway, and even seized Part of China. Ching-tang, who about fifty-two Years thence dethroned Kye, and founded the *Shang* Dynasty, again reduced them. In the Reign of Chung-ting, which began one thousand five hundred and sixty-two Years before Christ, they attacked China, and continued sometimes submissive, and sometimes rebellious, till 1324, when by the Weakness of the Emperor Yu-ting, they conquered the Provinces of *Kyang-nan*, and *Shan-tong*; whereof they kept Possession till Tsin-shi-wang, who ascended the Throne two hundred and forty-six Years before Christ, subdued them.

*Korea sub-
ject to Chi-
na.*

BUT as these Times are very obscure, the Race of Ki-tse.

^a See before, p. 119.

^b Or fifty Leagues.

^c Or an hundred Leagues.

^d Du Hald's China, p.

282. ^e This History, taken from the *Chinese* Annals, is not a connected Relation of the Affairs and Kings of Korea, but only so far as they concern the Empire of China: Yet, being the only Piece of the Kind extant, we judged it too important to be omitted.

Chinese

The History. Chinese History, confirmed by the Calculations a of Eclipses therein recounted^a, begins the Establishment of this Monarchy with *Ki-tse*. This Prince was imprisoned by his Nephew *Chew*, Emperor of *China*, for his Freedom in advising him; but released by *Vu-vang*, Founder of the *Chew* Dynasty, one thousand one hundred and twenty-two Years before Christ, who destroyed that Tyrant. However, *Ki-tse* not chusing to live under a Prince, by whom his own Family had been driven from the Throne, retired into *Chau-tsyen*, where, by the Assistance of the Emperor, he was made King. This Prince introduced among his People the Politeness of the *Chinese*, and soon, by his Wisdom, established his Dominion, which his Family enjoyed till the Emperor *Tsin-shi-wang*, before-mentioned, made *Chau-tsyen* dependent on *Lyau-tong*; but still leaving the Possession to the Descendants of *Ki-tse*, who for forty Years governed under the Title of *Hew*, or Marquis, till *Chun* re-assumed that of *Vang*, or King.

Another Dynasty.

In the Year 206, before Christ, *Kau-tsu*, likewise named *Lyew-pang*, Founder of the *Han* Dynasty, conquered the several Kingdoms *China* was then divided into, and established himself sole Monarch. *Wey-man*, or *Nyan*, a *Chinese* of the Province of *Pe-che-li*, taking Advantage of these Commotions, set himself at the Head of some disbanded Soldiers, several Times defeated *Chun*, and secured himself in the independent Possession of his Kingdom, putting an End to the Race of *Ki-tse*. *Wey-man*, after repeated Refusals from the *Chinese* Emperors, at last obtained a Confirmation of his usurped Crown from *Whey-ti* and *Lyu-hew*, his Mother, who governed in his Name. He afterwards brought the *Me*, the *Kau-kyu-li*, the *Wo-tsyu*, and all *Korea* under his Subjection. About one hundred and ten Years before the Christian Æra, *Yew-kyu*, Grandson of *Wey-man*, having put *She-ho*, the *Chinese* Ambassador, to Death, the Emperor *Vu-ti*, called likewise *Hyau-u-wang-ti*, sent his Generals against him, though without Success. But soon after *Yew-kyu* being assassinated, his People voluntarily submitted to the Emperor; who reduced *Chau-tsyen* into a Province, which he called *Tsan-hay*, and divided *Korea* into four more, namely, *Chin-fan*, *Lin-tong*, *Lo-lang*, and *Him-tu*. But the Emperor *Chau-ti*, who began his Reign eighty-six Years before Christ, afterwards reduced *Korea* into two.

The Kau-kyu-li.

THE *Kau-kyu-li* were descended from the *Fu-yu*, a People of Eastern *Tartary*: But they, resembling other idolatrous Nations, give fabulous Accounts of their Heros, of which the following is one. A Daughter of the God *Ho-hang-bo*,

being closely confined by the King of *Kau-kyu-li*, one Day as she was exposed to the Rays of the Sun, conceived; and afterwards brought-forth an Egg, as large as a Bushel, wherein was found a Male Child, who, when he grew-up, was named *Chu-mong*, or the *Good Archer*; and the King made him Overseer of his Studs. As *Chu-mong* starved the good Horses, and fattened the bad, the King chose the latter, and left him the former. One Day as they were hunting, his Majesty permitted him to shoot what Game fell in his Way; and he slew a great Number of Fallow-Deer, which made the King think of cutting him off. *Chu-mong*, perceiving his Intention, fled, and being hotly pursued, came to the River *Pu-shwi*, which not being able to cross, *Ab!* said he, *Shall I, who am the Offspring of the Sun, and Grandson to the God Ho-hang-bo, be by this River prevented in my Escape?* He had no sooner concluded his Ejaculation, than the Fish, binding themselves together, made a Bridge, over which he passed. On the other Side he met three Persons, one dressed in hempen Cloth, the second in a quilted Garment, and the third covered with Sea-Weeds. They accompanied him to the City *Kyi-shing-ku*, where he took the Name of *Kau*, signifying, that he came from *Kyau-kyu-li*.

QUANG-FU-TI, Restorer of the *Han* Dynasty, who ascended the Throne twenty-five Years before Christ, again made the Kingdom of *Chau-tsyen* dependent on *Lyau-tong*, which was governed by *Chay-fong*, famous for his Justice and Probity. Mean-time the King of *Kau-kyu-li* conquered the *Me*, *Japan*, the *Han*, and the *Fu-yu*, continuing the usual Tribute to the *Chinese* Emperors. But *Kong*, King of *Kau-kyu-li*, first carried the War into *China*, took the City *Him-tu*, and killed *Chay-fong*, Governor of *Lyau-tong*, in Battle. However, *Kong* was defeated, in his Turn, by *Wey-tay-kyew*, the King of *Fu-yu*'s Son; and was succeeded by his Son *Swi-ching*, who restored *Him-tu* to the Emperor, and paid the usual Tribute. Yet in the weak Reigns of *Whang-ti* and *Ling-ti*, he invaded that Country again: But under *Kyen-ti*, who began his Reign in the Year 196 after Christ, *Ken-lin*, Governor of the Province, expelled him. Part of *Swi-ching*'s Dominions were conquered by *Kong-Sun-tu*, which his Posterity enjoyed till *Kong-sun-ywen*, whose Kingdom was destroyed by the Dynasty of the *Wey*.

TI-MO retreated to the Foot of the Moun-Invaded in *Wa-tu-han*, and was succeeded by *Wey*, their Turn, *kong*, a brave and wise Prince, who joined the *Wey* Dynasty in the War against the Successors of *Kong-sun-tu*. In the Reign of *Ming-ti*^b, he

^a See before, p. 164.

^b It began in the Year of Christ 222.

The History. ravaged *Ngan-ping*, and *Lyau-su*, in the Province of *Lyau-tong*: But *Mu-kyew-kyen*, the Governor, having defeated him, sent *Vang-ki* in Pursuit, who followed him above a thousand *Li*, till he came to the Country of the *Su-shin*, or Eastern *Tartars*^a, where he erected a Stone-Monument in Memory of his Expedition.

CHAU, Great Great Grandson of *Kong*, being created King of *Chau-tsyen* by the Emperor *Yong-kye*^b, was driven from *Wa-tu* by *Mu-yong-wuhang*, who demolished it. *Mu-yong-pau* subdued *Ngan*, King of *Kau-kyu-li*, whom he made Governor of *Ping-chew*. The Kings of *Korea*, during the *Tsin*, *Song*, *Tsi*, latter *Wey*, and latter *Chew* Dynasties, were always created by the Emperors.

Attack Lyau-tong. IN the Year 611, and seventh of the Reign of *Yang-ti*, of the *Sui* Dynasty, *Ywen*, King of *Korea*, at the Head of the *Mo-ko*, invaded *Lyau-tong*, and advanced as far as *Lyw-si*. The Emperor summoned him to appear before him, and, upon his Refusal, went in Person against him: But the *Koreans* taking Shelter in their Cities, which they vigorously defended, and Provisions falling short, the Emperor was obliged to return. He thrice invaded *Korea*, with no better Success. *Kyen-vu* succeeding his Father *Ywen*, was honoured with the Title of *Ssang-chu-que*, or chief Pillar of the State, by the Founder of the *Tang* Dynasty, who ascended the Throne in 620. *Korea* was at that Time divided into five *Pu*, or Governments, that of the Court possessed the Middle; the others had Respect to the four Quarters of the World.

Their King assassinated. *KAY-SVEN*^c, of the Family of the *Tsuen*, (or *Tsien*) succeeding his Father in the Eastern Government, assassinated *Kyen-vu*; and using the Body with the utmost Indignity, set *Tang*, a younger Brother of the Deceased, upon the Throne; but, under the Title of *Mo-li-chi*, retained the Power in his own Hands. This Traitor, who was of a savage Disposition, pretended to be the Son of a River-God, thinking to secure the Veneration of the People by the Splendor of his Birth. Mean-time the *Koreans* attacked the People of *Sin-lo*; and they begged Assistance

of the Emperor *Tay-tsung*, who began his Reign in 627. This Monarch having been informed of the barbarous Murder of *Kyen-vu*, set-out at the Head of a mighty Army, to punish the Criminal, and gave Orders for the King of *Ki-tan-hi*, *Pe-tsi*, and *Sin-lo*, to join him. He took two Towns, and then set-down before *Lyau-tong*. He was generous to his Soldiers, and tender of the Sick. One Day he helped some of them up with a Load of Earth, which they were carrying to fill the Trenches; which noble Act of Humility made the Officers proud to imitate his Example.

At last having ordered Fire to be set to some combustible Matter, the Wind carried the Flames into the City; which occasioned a general Conflagration, wherein above ten thousand Men perished. He then reduced it to a City of the second Order, and called it *Lyau-chew*. The Imperial Army besieged *Ngan-shi*; to the Relief of which *Kyau-yen-shew*, and *Kau-whey-chin*, came, at the Head of an hundred and fifty thousand *Mo-ko*. The Emperor having observed a shooting-Star fall in the *Mo-ko* Camp, believed it a happy Omen, and next Morning attacked their Trenches, and routed them. The two Generals submitted to the Emperor's Mercy, who gave them Posts; but ordered three thousand of the *Mo-ko* of *Ping-yang*^d to be buried alive. He named the Mountain, at the Foot of which he was incamped, *Hyu-king-chong*, and caused a Monument, with an Inscription, to be erected there.

AFTER this the *Sin-lo* obtained the Assistance of *Kau-tsung* (who began his Reign in 650) against the *Koreans* and *Mo-ko*, who had declared War against them, and taken thirty-six of their Towns. Mean-time *Kay-sven* dying, was succeeded as *Mo-li-chi* by his Son *Nan-seng*; who disagreeing with his younger Brothers *Tsven nan-kyen*, and *Tsven nan-chan*, came in Person to implore his Majesty's Assistance. *Tsing-tu*, younger Brother of *Kay-sven*, likewise waited on the Emperor, and gave-up to him Part of his Dominions. *Kau-tsung*, in 667, sent an Army under *Li-tsing*, against the *Koreans*; who having be-

^a While *Vang-ki* was in this Country, the Natives told him, that their Fishermen were often driven by Storms to an Island, where the Language was different, and the Inhabitants on the seventh Month, annually, drowned a Virgin in the Sea. They also informed him of another Kingdom, peopled only by Women, who conceived of themselves, and carried the Fœtus in their Stomach: They had no Breasts, but suckled the Child for an hundred Days by a Tuft of Hair behind the Neck, which yielded a Liquor like Milk; and the Infant grew more in that Time, than another did in four Years. They added, that the Sea-Coast was inhabited by Men with two Faces, who understood no Language, and starved themselves when taken: That they once seized a Man clothed in the Chinese Manner, whose Sleeves were thirty Feet long; and that this Country was near the Eastern Boundary of *Wo-lyu*. Such are the romantic Imaginations of these People.

^b Another History relates, that *Kau-lyen*, King of *Kou-li*, in the Reign of the same *Kong-kye*, conquered *Korea*, and took *Pin-jam*, where he fixed his Court: That he made himself Master of that Part of *Lyau-tong* on the East of the River *Lyau*, and frequently invaded *Lyau-si*, or *Western Lyau*; but *Lyau-tong* was recovered by *Fang-tay-tsung*. By this Account *Kau-chau* is the same Person with *Kau-lyen*.

^c In the Original, *Kay-su-ven*.

^d As in the

sieged

The History.
Takes their
King.

sieged *Ping-yang*, *Tsang*, the titular King of *Korea*, with about an hundred Attendants, surrendered himself. But *Nan-kyen* defended the City with wonderful Bravery, till betrayed by one of his Generals, who, when *Li-tsing* set Fire to a Gate by Agreement, delivered it into his Hands. *Nan-kyen* was made Prisoner, and *Korea* divided into five Governments, consisting of one hundred and seventy principal Cities, and six hundred and ninety thousand Families.

ABOUT the Year 687, in the Reign of the Empress *Vu-hew*, *Pau-ywen*, Grandson of *Tsang*, last King of *Korea*, was created King of the second Rank of *Chau-tsyen*, to which *Korea* had changed its Name from *Kau-li*. About the Year 927, *Vang-kyen*, who governed *Korea*, assumed the Dignity of King (and founded a Dynasty.) He subdued the Kingdoms of *Pe-tsi*, and *Sin-lo*, and removed the regal Seat from *Pin-jam*, which he called *Si-king*, or the Western Court, eastwards to the Foot of the Mountain *Song-yo*.

The Koreans
tributary.

FOR three Reigns under the *U-tay*, the Kings of the House of *Vang* paid their Tribute regularly to the Emperors. *Vang-chau*, King of *Chau-tsyen*, paid Homage to *Tay-tson*, Founder of the *Tsong* Dynasty, who came to the Empire in 960. *Chi*, the third King from *Vang-chau*, was forced to pay Homage to the *Ki-tan* Tartars, who conquered the Northern Parts of *China*, and were called *Lyau*. These People took from *Vang-sun*, second Successor to *Chi*, six of his Towns; who thereupon removed his Court at a greater Distance from them: But having entered into a League with the *Nyu-ché* Tartars, who destroyed the *Lyau*, and fixed themselves in the Northern Parts of *China*, he expelled the *Ki-tan* from his Dominions, and again paid Tribute to the *Chinese* Emperor; who received his Ambassadors with particular Marks of Favour, because of his Bravery against the *Ki-tan*.

Defeat the
Ki-tan,

THE *Nyu-ché* had been formerly subject to the *Koreans*, who were, in their Turn, subdued by the *Nyu-ché*. Their Princes assumed the Title of Emperor, and gave the Name of *Kin* to their Family; which, however, is not reckoned among the Dynasties, because they never were

Masters of all *China*, the Emperors of the House of *Song* still keeping Possession of the Southern Provinces. The Emperor *Kau-tsong*, who mounted the Throne in 1127, sent an Ambassador to the *Koreans*, to prevent their joining the *Kin*; who to hinder their Friendship with the *Chinese*, sent *Vang-chû* into *Korea*, and created him King.

CHÉ, King of *Korea*, sent *Ching* his Son, and presumptive Heir, to pay Homage to the Emperor *Li-tsong*; but the old King dying,

Ching returned to take Possession of his Throne, which was confirmed to him by the Emperor. This Prince had paid Tribute thirty-six Times, when *Shi-tsu*, as the *Chinese*, or *Hûbilay*, as the Tartars call him, Son of *Jeng-hiz-khân*, Founder of the *Yuen* Family (in 1280) resolved to undertake the Conquest of *Japan*, and march his Army through *Korea*, in order to facilitate his Entrance. With this Design he sent an Ambassador to *Japan*, whom he ordered to pass through *Korea*, and take his Guides from thence: But the *Koreans* not allowing this, the Emperor resented it, and seizing on *Si-king*, or *Pin-jam*, called it *Tong-nin-fû*. *Shin*, who changed his Name to *Kyu*, succeeding his Father *Ching*, married a Daughter of the Emperor, and received the Seal of the Emperor's Son-in-law, with the Title of King of *Korea*; and his third Successor was called *Song*. From *Vang-kyen* to *Vang-Sang*, are reckoned twenty-eight Kings of *Korea* of the *Vang* Family, during the Space of more than four hundred Years.

CHWEN, King of *Korea*, having by his Ambassadors paid Homage to the Emperor *Hong-wû*, Founder of the *Ming* Dynasty in 1368, was, by that Monarch, created King of *Kau-li*, presented with a Silver Seal, and vested with the ancient Privileges of sacrificing to the Gods of the Rivers and Mountains of *Korea*. In the seventeenth Year of *Hong-wû*, the Ambassadors of *Korea* having engaged in the Conspiracy of *Hû-vi-yong*, against that Monarch, refused to do the usual Homage: But the Affair being discovered, the Emperor ordered the *Koreans* to be declared Enemies. Soon after the Ambassadors of *Korea* arriving at *Lyau-tong*, the Governor sent Advice

* *Du Haldé's China*, p. 377, & seq.

^b The Author observes in a Note, that the *Nyu-ché*, under the *Han*, were called *Yew*; in the Time of *Vu-sang*, they bore the Name of *Su-shin*; under they *Wey*, that of *U-ti*; under the *Szei*, that of *Mo-ko*; and under the latter *Tang*, that of *Nyu-ching*; which *Song* altered to *Ché*, because a Tartarian Emperor of the *Lyau* Dynasty was named *Ching*. However, it is probable, that these different Names did properly belong not to all the Nations inhabiting that vast Tract of Land, lying between the Rivers *Wên-tong-kyang*, and *He-long-kyang* (or *Amur*) *Korea*, and the Eastern Sea; but only to that People, who at different Times obtained the Superiority. Thus they may now be called *Manchews*, though the Name, strictly taken, belongs to a Nation the least considerable of any in that Country; and thus the *Mo-ko*, who there erected a mighty Kingdom, called themselves *Po-hây*. But it is not surprizing to find the same Nations called by different Appellations in *China*, as Towns, Countries, and Kingdoms, change their Names at the Pleasure of their Princes.

^c Hence their Subjects are called *Kin* Tartars, in the *Chinese* History. *Kin* signifies Gold, and the *Monguls*, or Western Tartars, called their King *Altun-khân*, or the Golden King.

^d The *Koblay*,

thereof.

The History.

thereof to his Majesty, who accepted of the Satisfaction they offered. In his twenty-second Year, he sent into *Korea* to buy Horses, and, at the same Time, commanded *Lyau-yang*, and *Shin-ching*, two Towns which had been seized in the Province of *Lyau-tong*, to be restored to him. Soon after *Kyu* was dethroned, and *Vang-chang* advanced to the Sovereignty by *Li-jin-jin*, Prime-Minister of *Korea*; whose Son *Li-ching-quey*, in like Manner deprived *Vang-chang* of his Crown, and put it on the Head of *Vang-yau*, whom he soon removed, and placed himself in his Stead. Thus ended the House of *Vang*.

A new Revolution.

THE Usurper changed his Name to *Tan*, and sent a solemn Embassy to *China*, desiring that he might be confirmed King of *Chau-tsyen*, with the usual Formalities: But the Terms of the Petition being disrespectful, the Emperor refused the Presents, and ordered that *Ching-tse*, who had drawn it up, should be sent him. *Tan* obeyed, and *Ching-tse* was banished to *Yun-nan*. The Emperor *Yong-lo*, who began his Reign in 1403, confirmed the Kingdom to *Fang-ywen*, to whom his Father *Tan* had resigned. This Prince being informed, that the Emperor had assigned some new Lands to the Garison of *Lyau-tong*, sent, as his Tribute, ten thousand Oxen for stocking them. *Fang-ywen* was succeeded by his Son *Tau*, who sent his Tribute in Ger-falcons, or Sea-Eagles. But the Emperor refused them, saying, *Jewels and rare Animals are not what I like*. *Vang-ki-uban*, King of *Korea*, prevailed with the Emperor, *Kya-tsing*, to erase out of the Book of the ancient Usages of the *Ming*, the Article relating, that *Ching-quey* had dethroned his lawful Sovereign, and usurped his Crown; because, said the *Korean* King, *he did it at the Solicitation of the People and Grandees of the Kingdom*.

The Koreans invaded

IN 1592, the twentieth Year of the Emperor *Van-lye*, *Ping-syew-kyi*, chief of the *Japanese*, invaded *Korea*. This Conqueror was originally a Slave to an Inhabitant of *Sa-mo*, and afterwards a Retailer of Fish. It happened as *Sin-chang*, a *Quan-pe*, or *Japanese* Governor, went a hunting, he observed *Kyi* asleep under a Tree, and intended to kill him: But *Kyi* waking, spoke so handsomely in his own Behalf, that his Enemy relented, made him Intendant of his Studs, and named him, in *Japanese*, *the Man from under the Tree*. *Kyi* soon grew in Favour with his Master, who gave him a Land-Estate, and made him his Confident. *Sin-chang* being assassinated by *O-ki-chi*, his Counsellor, *Kyi* put himself at the Head of the Troops, revenged his Master's

a Death by killing his Murderer, and succeeded to the Dignity of *Quan-pe*. He soon grew powerful, and by Fraud, as well as Force, made himself Master of sixty small Provinces.

Regia. 1720.

THE Mountain *Kin-shan*, in *Korea*, and the Island **Twi-ma-tau*, in *Japan*, are within Sight of one another, and the two Nations intermarried, and traded together. *Kyi* having formed a Design upon *Korea*, sent *Hing-chang*, and *Tsing-ching*, two of his Generals, with a numerous Fleet to attack it. They landed at *Fou-shan*, a Village; passed by *Lin-tsin* undiscovered, and dividing their Forces, took the City *Fon-te*, with several others. The *Koreans* being quite softened by a long Peace, fled, upon the Approach of the Enemy. The King *Li-sen*, wholly devoted to his Pleasures, leaving the Government in the Hands of his second Son, retired to *Ping-yang*, and afterwards to *I-chew* in *Lyau-tong*, beseeching the Emperor to receive him as his Subject, and to reduce his Kingdom to a Province. The *Japanese* had already demolished the Sepulchres, and plundered the Treasury, taken the Mother, Children, and Officers of the King, and subdued the greater Part of the Kingdom. They invested *Ping-yang*, and were preparing to pass the *Ya-lu-kyang*, in order to enter *Lyau-tong*: Upon which the *Korean* King withdrew from *I-chew* to *Ngay-chew*, and dispatched Couriers to hasten the Succours from the Emperor. At last two *Chinese* Detachments, each of about three thousand Men, advanced towards *Ping-yang*, but were cut to Pieces, and the Commander of the first killed.

SONG-ING-CHANG being sent as ** King-lyo*, or Superintendent-General, the *Chinese* Forces began to rendezvous. The *Japanese* Generals, in order to gain Time, told the *Chinese* they never intended to attack them, but only to make the River *Ta-tong-kyang* the Boundary of their Conquests, and return to *Japan*. However, they fortified the Capital of *Korea*, and posted sufficient Guards in all Places of Importance. During these Transactions, *Kyi* conquered the King of *Shan-ching*, and assumed the Title of *Tay-ko*.

IN the twelfth Month *Li-yu-song*, the *Chinese* General, marched through *Lyau-tong*, at the Head of sixty thousand Men: The Passage over the Mountain *Fong-whang-shan* ^a was so very difficult, that all his Horses are said to have sweated Blood. *Shin-vi-king* was sent before to overreach *Hing-chang*, the *Japanese* General, at *Ping-yang*, and persuade him that *Li-yu-song* came with no other Intention, but to create his Master a King, for which he was invested with full

To their Assistance.

^a Another Author says, they are about two or three Days Sail distant, with a fair Wind. In the Map called *Twi-la-tau*. ^b The *King-lyo* has Power over Life and Death, as well as a general Inspection into all Affairs whatever. ^c Or, *Ping-syew-kyi*. ^d Near the City *Fong-whang-ching*, on the Western Border of *Korea*.

The History. Powers from the Emperor. This Stratagem had a the desired Effect, and *Hing-chang* sent twenty Officers to meet the *Chinese* General, who gave Orders to a Party to apprehend them; but they so bravely defended themselves, that only three were taken. This *Shin-vi-king*, having imputed to a Misunderstanding amongst the Interpreters, the *Japanese* General sent two trusty Persons along with him, to compliment *Li-yu-song*, who treated and dismissed them courteously.

Ping-yang
described,

PING-YANG is defended by a River on the South-East, and by steep Mountains on the West: But the Place of greatest Importance was an Eminence on the North, guarded by the *Japanese*. The *Chinese* arriving before this City on the sixth of the first Month, of the twenty-first Year of *Van-lye*, *Li-yu-song* drew up his Troops in order of Battle, and began to march them into it; while the *Japanese*, in their richest Accoutrements, lined the Way, and their General, from a Tower, viewed the Procession. But the *Chinese* Officers behaving with a Haughtiness no Way consistent with Friendship, the *Japanese* suspected the Deceit, and put themselves on their Guard. Hereupon *Li-yu-song* made a Feint to attack the Eminence on the North-Side; ordering the Detachment to retire after the first Charge, with a Design to draw the Enemy from that advantageous Post. In the Night the *Japanese* attacked the *Chinese* Camp, but were repulsed with Loss.

Taken by
Assault.

ON the eighth at Day-break, the general Assault was given, and the main Attack was on the South-East Side of the City. At first the *Chinese* gave Ground, but *Li-yu-song*, by killing some who fled, brought the rest back to the Charge. That General had his Horse slain under him, and *Wey-chong* was shot quite through the Breast, but, to the last, continued to encourage his Men. *Li-yu-song* taking a fresh Horse, pressed where the Battle was hottest: Then ordering the Walls to be scaled, made himself Master of them, and the *Japanese* retired to the Fortrefs; whence many of them, with their General, made their Escape by Midnight, and passed the River *Ta-tong-kyang*. Two hundred and eighty-five were killed in the Action, and a great Number drowned in crossing the River. A Detachment of three thousand *Chinese* formed an Ambuscade for the Fugitives, of whom they slew three hundred and sixty-two, and made some Prisoners. The nineteenth the *Chinese* took the City of *Fu-kay* by Storm, killing one hundred and sixty-five *Japanese*, who by these Deaths were now deprived of four Provinces of Korea.

The Chinese
worsted,

CHING-KING, a *Japanese* General, who

^a Or, seven Leagues.

^b Or, *Ping-syew-kyi*. *Tay-ko* is a *Japanese* Title, signifying King,

being

was Master of *Hyen-king*, retired to the Capital, within seventy *Li*^a of which, the *Chinese* had marched on the twenty-seventh, and were informed, that the Enemy had abandoned it. Their General believing the Report, put himself at the Head of the Light-Horse, and advanced to the Pass of *Pik-ti-quan*, within thirty *Li* of that City: As he was riding at full Speed to the Bridge *Ta-she-kyau*, his Horse fell, and he pitching on his Head, was almost killed. Immediately they were surrounded by an Ambuscade of the Enemy, and a desperate Engagement ensued. A *Japanese* Commander, who had on a Cuirass of Gold, pressed hard upon the *Chinese* Generalissimo; but being at length shot-through with an Arrow, and *Yang-ywen* coming up to his Relief, the Enemy was put to Flight: However, all the *Chinese* who had passed the Bridge were cut in Pieces, and the Flower of their Army was lost in this Action, which lasted from Ten of the Clock till Noon.

Regis.

1720.

THE Ground was become exceeding slippery, *Japanese* by reason of a Thaw, accompanied with great Rains; so that the *Chinese* Cavalry could not charge: Whereas the *Japanese* Camp was on an advantageous Ground, with a River in Front, and a Mountain in the Rear: They had likewise raised, within the Town, high Machines, filled with destructive Weapons: For these Reasons, the *Chinese* Army retreated to *Chay-king*. In the third Month, the Spies brought Account, that there were two hundred thousand *Japanese* about the Capital, and that they were plentifully supplied with Corn: But the *Chinese* having fortunately burnt Part of it, which made the Enemy apprehensive of a Scarcity, they agreed to a Peace, and yielded up the Capital. *Li-yu-song* entered that City the eighteenth of the fourth Month, finding forty thousand Bushels of Rice, and Forage in Proportion. The *Japanese* sent an Ambassador into *China* to make their Submission; yet in the mean Time attacked *Hyen-ngan* and *Tsin-chew*, and ravaged the Province of *Tsuen-lo*. In the seventh Month they delivered up the Children, and principal Officers of the King of Korea; and the Emperor, in the twenty-second Year of his Reign, agreed, at the Intreaty of that Prince, to accept of the Tribute offered by the *Japanese*, and to create *Ping-syew-kyi* King of *Japan*, on the following Conditions. 1. That the *Japanese* should deliver up all their Conquests in Korea. 2. That *Tay-ko*^b should send no Ambassador into *China*: And, 3. Swear never to invade Korea.

LI-TSONG-CHING, Marquis of *Lin-whay*, *An ambassador* was sent Ambassador to *Japan*, with proper Powers to create *Tay-ko* King. That Lord

The History. being much given to the Sex, *I-chi*, Governor of *Twi-ma*, who had married the *Japannese* General's Daughter, and knew the Ambassador's Foible, sent him, as soon as he arrived there, three handsome young Women, by Turns, into his Tent. This Entertainment he was not displeased with, but being afterwards informed, that the Governor's Wife was extremely beautiful, he had the Impudence to demand her of her Husband, who thereupon could not conceal his Resentment. About this Time, *Long*, a *Japannese* Gentleman, disputed the Way with the Marquis, who attempted to kill him: But *Long* being assisted by his Domestics, the Ambassador thought fit to save himself, by Flight; leaving every Thing, even his very Credentials behind him. He wandered about all Night, and in Despair hanged himself upon a Tree; but his Death was timely prevented by those who followed him. He then fled to *King-chew*, where, by the Emperor's Orders, he was tried for his Misconduct, and *Yang-fang-beng* sent in his Room ^a.

Chinese King of Japan.

PING-SYEW-KYT ^b having fasted and bathed for three Days, went to meet the Emperor's Patent; before which he prostrated himself fifteen Times, and was created King of *Japan* with the usual Formalities. The King of *Korea* being advised, by his Favourite *Li-chin*, to shew his Contempt of the new King, sent his Compliments only by a Deputy-Governor of a City of the second Rank, with a few ordinary Pieces of Silk as a Present. *Ping-syew-kyt* was highly offended, and said to the Ambassador, *Has your Master already forgotten, that I conquered his Kingdom, and only, out of Regard to the Emperor, restored it to him? What does he imagine I am, when he sends me such a Present by one of your Rank? Whom does he affront, me, or the Emperor? But since I am treated in this Manner, my Forces shall not leave Korea, till the Emperor chastises the King your Master.* The next Day he sent with his Tribute, which was very rich, two Remonstrances, one acknowledging his Obligations to the Emperor, and the other demanding Justice of the King of *Korea*.

The War renewed.

In the twenty-fifth Year of *Van-lye*, the War was renewed, and the *Japannese* under the Command of *Tsing-ching*, and *Hang-ching*, invaded *Korea* with a Fleet of two hundred Sail. They took *Nan-ywen-fu*, the Governor of which fled bare-footed, upon their first Approach, and soon made themselves Masters of *Tsuen-chew*: Likewise of *Nyau-ling*, and *Chong-chew* on the East, *Nan-ywen*, and *Tsuen-chew* on the West; Cities commanding the narrow Passes leading to the

Capital, which was by this Means in a Manner blocked-up. *Tsing-ching* fixed his Quarters at *Tun-tsing*, six hundred *Li* ^c from the Capital, and *Hang-ching* at *King-shang*, four hundred *Li* from thence. The *Chinese*, headed by *Hau-quey*, laid Siege to the latter; but upon a Report, that the Enemy had received Succours, he fled: Hereupon his Army dispersing, twenty thousand of them were killed; for which Cowardice *Hau-quey* was put to Death.

In the ninth Month of the twenty-sixth Year of *Van-lye*, *Lew-ting* marched against *Hing-chang*, but proposed to him a Conference, wherein Affairs might be amicably adjusted. The *Japannese* General agreed to the Proposal, and next Day went to the Place appointed, attended only by fifty Horse. *Lew-ting*, who had laid an Ambuscade, and caused one of his Officers to personate him, went as one of his Retinue, dressed like a common Soldier. *Hing-chang* was received by the pretended General with extraordinary Honours: But as he sat at Table, looking steadfastly on *Lew-ting* in his Disguise, *Surely*, said he, *this Soldier has been unfortunate.* *Lew-ting* surprized at this Speech, goes-out of the Tent, and gives the Signal to the Ambuscade, by firing a great Gun. *Hing-chang* suspecting the Treachery, in an Instant mounted, with his Attendants, who forming themselves into a Triangle, pierced through the *Chinese* Troops, making a dreadful Slaughter, and escaped. Next Day *Hing-chang* sent to thank the *Chinese* General for his Entertainment, who endeavoured to excuse the Firing of the Gun as an Accident. *Hing-chang* appeared to be satisfied with the Apology, and sent him a Woman's Head-dress as a Present. *Lew-ting* immediately made an Attack, but was every-where worsted. At last, upon the Death of *Tay-ko*, in the Year 1598, the twenty-sixth of *Van-lye*, the *Japannese* returned to their own Country, and put an End to the War which had lasted seven Years.

LI-TUN, the present King of *Korea* ^d, is of the *Li* Family. In 1694, he presented the following Petition to the Emperor *Kang-hi*.

"THIS Petition is presented by the King of *Chaw-tsyen*, with a Design to settle his Family, and shew the Desires of his People."

"I, your Subject, am a Man amongst the Unfortunate: I was long without an Heir, till at last, to my great Joy, I had a Son by a Concubine, whom I thereupon exalted; but from this false Step all my Unhappiness springs. I obliged Queen *Min-shi* to retire, and made *Chang-shi* Queen in her Stead, of which I then informed your Majesty. But now I reflect,

^a Du Halde's *China*, p. 379. & seq.

^b Here and afterwards written *Pin-lyew-kyt*.

^c Sixty Leagues.

^d That is, about the Year 1720, when *Regis* wrote this Relation.

DESCRIPTION of KOREA.

329

*Voyage to
Quelpaert.*

“ that *Min-shi* was created Queen by your Ma-
 “ jesty, that she has governed my Family, as-
 “ sisted me in Sacrifices, waited upon the Queen
 “ my Great Grandmother, and the Queen my
 “ Mother, and mourned with me three Years :
 “ I ought, therefore, to have treated her ho-
 “ nourably ; but I yielded to my Imprudence,
 “ for which I am at present extreamly concern-
 “ ed. Now, to comply with the Desires of my
 “ People, I intend to restore *Min-shi* to her
 “ former Dignity, and again to reduce *Chang-*
 “ *shi* to the Condition of a Concubine. By
 “ these Means my Family will be put in Order,
 “ and a Reformation of Manners begun in my
 “ Kingdom.”

To Kang-hi.

“ I YOUR Subject, though by my Ignorance
 “ and Stupidity I have disgraced the Title of
 “ my Ancestors, yet have served your Majesty
 “ these twenty Years, and all that I am I owe
 “ to your Goodness, which, like Heaven, shields

“ and defends me. There is no Affair, whether
 “ public, or private, that I conceal from you,
 “ which makes me presume to solicit your Ma-
 “ jesty, two or three Times, about this Affair.
 “ I am indeed ashamed to transgress the Bounds
 “ of my Duty ; but as the Matter concerns my
 “ Family, and is agreeable to the Wishes of my
 “ People, I thought I might, without Breach
 “ of Respect, lay it before your Majesty.”

THE Tribunal of Ceremonies, to whom this
 Petition was referred, were of Opinion, that it
 ought to be complied with ; and accordingly Am-
 bassadors were sent to create the Queen, with the
 usual Formalities. But the Petition which the
 King sent next Year to the Emperor, being
 wanting somewhat in Point of Respect, the same
 Tribunal condemned him to pay a Fine of ten
 thousand *Chinese* Ounces of Silver, and for three
 Years allowed him no Return for the annual
 Tribute *.

1653.

Hamel.

C H A P. II.

TRAVELS of some Dutchmen in KOREA, with an Account of the Country,
 and their Shipwreck on the Island of Quelpaert.

By Henry Hamel.

Translated from the French.

INTRODUCTION.

THE following short Relation was first
 printed by the Author in *Holland*, where
 the eight Men, who returned from *Korea*, were
 then living : These having been examined by se-
 veral Persons of Reputation, all confirmed what
 the Secretary of the Ship, as he calls himself,
 had written. This seems to render the Narra-
 tive sufficiently authentic, in the Opinion of the
English Translator ^b ; who observes, that accord-
 ing to the *French* Editor, in his Preface, there is
 nothing asserted in the Description of *Korea*, ^d
 which does not agree with what *Palafoux*, and
 others who wrote of the *Tartar* Invasion, had
 said before. However true this may prove, with
 regard to the Customs of the People (which, as
 well as the Form of Government, seems to be
 nearly the same with the *Chinese*) there seems to

lie an Objection against the Geography of the
Dutch Author, viz. that it does not correspond
 with the Map of *Korea*, as to the Names of any
 of the Cities ^e in the Road, which the *Dutchmen*
 took from the Sea-Coast to the Capital of that
 Kingdom, or even that of the Capital itself :
 Especially since that Map was taken from one
 hung-up in the King's Palace, and gives the in-
 digenous Names to Places, unless the Names be
 written by the Missioners, according to the *Chi-
 nese*, instead of the *Korean* Language : For
 though both Nations use the same Characters,
 their Languages are different. As the Author re-
 sided thirteen Years in *Korea*, the Translator
 thinks he might have published a more ample
 and satisfactory Account of it. Be that as it will,
 we may be content, provided it is but genuine,

* *Du Halde's China*, p. 381.

^b This Translation is inserted in the fourth Volume of one of our great
English Collections, under the Title of *An Account of the Shipwreck of a Dutch Vessel on the Coast of Quelpaert,*
 together with the Description of the Kingdom of *Korea*.

^c The Names given by *Hamel* to the Provinces,

*Voyage to
Quelpaert.*

since that which the Missioners have sent-over is a much more scanty. At the End of the Journal^a, we meet with the Names both of those who returned from *Korea*, and those who were left behind, making in all but sixteen out of thirty-six, who were saved from the Wreck thirteen Years before.

Those who returned from *Korea*, were
Henry Hamel, of *Gorcum*, Secretary to the Ship, and Author of this Account.
Godfrey Denis, of *Rotterdam*.
John Piters, of *Uries* in *Friezland*.
Gerard Jans, of *Rotterdam*.
Matthew Ybocken, of *Enchuysen*.
Cornelius Theodorick, of *Amsterdam*.
Benet Clerc, of *Rotterdam*.
Denis Godfrey, of *Rotterdam*.

The Names of those who remained in *Korea*,

John Lampe, of *Amsterdam*.
Henry Cornelius, of *Ureelandt*.
John Nicholas, of *Dort*.
Jacob Jans, of *Norway*.
Anthony Ulders, of *Embden*.
Nicholas Arents, of *Ost-Voren*.
Alexander Bosquet, a *Scotchman*.
John, of *Utrecht*.

S E C T. I.

Their Shipwreck on Quelpaert, and Travels in Korea.

1. *Their Voyage to Quelpaert, and Shipwreck there.*

Departure from Holland. Great Storms. Their Distress. The Ship wrecked: How treated by the Natives. The Wreck secured for their Use: Sent-up to the Governor: Are closely confined, but kindly used: They meet with a Dutchman, sent as Interpreter. Very good Governor. A very bad one. Some attempt to escape: Taken, and punished. Quelpaert described.

*Their Departure from
Holland.*

THEY left the *Taxel* in the *Sparrow-Hawk*, on the tenth of *January* 1653, in the Evening; and after many Storms, and much foul Weather, came to an Anchor the first of *June*, in the Road of *Batavia*. As soon as they had refreshed themselves, they set-sail the fourteenth of the same Month, by Command of the Governor-General, for *Tayowan*^b, where they arrived the sixteenth of *July*. They carried with them *Mynheer Cornelius Lessen*, who went to take Possession of the Government of that City,

and *Formosa*, in Place of *Mynheer Nicholas Verburge*^c, who had resided there three Years. The thirtieth they, by Order of the Council, departed for *Japan*: But next Day, towards the Evening, as they were getting out of the Channel of *Formosa*, there arose a Storm, which increased all Night.

1653.
Hamel.

THE first of *August*, in the Morning early, they perceived themselves close-upon a small Island, where, with much Difficulty, they at length came to an Anchor; for in most Parts of that Sea there is no Bottom. The Fog clearing-up, they found themselves so near the Coast of *China*, that they could easily discern armed Men scattered along the Shore, expecting to make their Advantage of the Ship's Wreck^d: But though the Storm increased, they there continued all that Day, and the Night following, in Sight of them. The third Day they perceived the Storm had driven them twenty Leagues from their Course, so that they were again in Sight of *Formosa*. They plied betwixt that Island and the Continent, the Weather somewhat cold. What troubled them most, was, that the uncertain Winds and Calms kept them in that Channel till the eleventh of the same Month, when a South-East Wind grew-up into a Storm, with a heavy Rain, and forced them to run North-East, and North-East by East. The three following Days the Weather continued still more tempestuous, and the Wind shifted so often, that they were continually hoisting and lowering their Sails.

By this Time the frequent Beating of the Sea^{Their Distress} had much weakened their Vessel, and the continual Rain obstructed their making any Observation; for which Reason they were forced to furl all their Sails, strike the Yards, and commit themselves to the Mercy of the Waves. On the fifteenth the Ship took-in so much Water, that there was no mastering it. That Night their Boat, and the greater Part of their Gallery, were carried away, by the continual breaking-in of the Waves, which shook their Bolt-sprit, and endangered their Prow: Nor was it possible to repair the Damage sustained, the Gusts of Wind were so violent, and came so close one upon another. At length a Wave breaking over their Stern, had like to have washed-away all the Seamen who were upon the Deck, and filled the Ship so full of Water, that the Master cried out, to cut-down the Mast by the Board immediately, and go to their Prayers, saying, if one or two such Waves should return, they were inevitably lost.

THIS was their Condition, when the second^{The Shipwrecked.}

^a In the fourth Volume of the said Collection, p. 587.

^b Or *Tay-awán* in *Formosa*. In the *English* Translation, *Tayowan*. ^c See Vol. III. p. 403. b. ^d Rather to guard the Coast against Smugglers, or *Koxinga's* Men.

Watch.

*Voyage to
Quelpaert.*

Watch being just run-out, he who looked ahead, cried, *Land, Land*, adding, *that they were not above a Musket-Shot from Shore*, which they could not descry sooner for the Rain and Darkness of the Night. They could not come to an Anchor, because they found no Bottom; and while they were endeavouring at it, in vain, three successive Waves sprung such a Leak in the Vessel, that they who were in the Hold were drowned before they could get-out. Some of those on the Deck leaped over-board, and the rest were carried-away by the Sea. Fifteen of them got ashore, for the most Part naked, and much hurt. They thought, at first, none had escaped except themselves; but in climbing the Rocks, they heard the Voices of some Men complaining, whom next Day, by calling and seeking about the Strand, they met-with, scattered here and there: So that they made-up thirty-six, no more remaining out of sixty-four, and most of them dangerously hurt.

*Thirty-six
saved,*

IN searching the Wreck, they found a Man wedged betwixt two Planks, which had so pressed his Body, that he lived but three Hours: But of all who perished, they could find only their Captain, *Egbertz*, of *Amsterdam*, stretched-out on the Sand, ten or twelve Fathom from the Water, with his Arm under his Head, whom they buried: Nor had the Sea cast any of their Provisions ashore, except one Sack of Meal, a Cask with some salt Meat, a little Bacon, and a Hoghead of Claret. Their greatest Trouble was, to contrive how to make a Fire, concluding they were on some Desert-Island. Towards Evening the Wind and Rain somewhat abating, they gathered enough of the Timber, and Sails of the Wreck, to make some Shelter against the Weather.

How treated

THE seventeenth as they were lamenting their deplorable Condition, sometimes complaining that they saw no-body, and sometimes flattering themselves with the Hopes of being near *Japan*, they spied a Man about a Cannon-Shot distant, to whom they called, and made Signs; but as soon as he saw them he fled. Afternoon they spied three more, one carried a Musket, and his Companions Bows. Being come within Gun-Shot, they halted, and perceiving the *Dutchmen* made towards them, ran-away, though they endeavoured to inform them, by Signs, that they desired nothing but Fire. At last one of the Company resolving to attack them, they delivered up their Arms without Opposition, and thus kindled their Fuel. These Men were clad after the *Chinese* Fashion, excepting only their Hats, which were of Horse-Hair; and the *Dutch* were much afraid lest they should be wild *Chinese*, or Pirates. To-

wards Evening there came an hundred armed Men, clad like the former, who after counting, kept them inclosed all Night.

1653.
Hamel.

NEXT Day at Noon, there coming-down about two thousand Men, Horse and Foot, who drew-up in order of Battle before their Hut, or Tent, their Secretary, the chief Pilot, and his Mate, with a Boy, went-out to meet them. When they were brought to the Commander, he ordered a great Iron Chain to be put about the Neck of each of them, with a little Bell, in which Condition they were obliged to prostrate themselves before him. Those in the Hut were treated in the same Manner, all the Islanders, at the same Time, raising a great Shout. When they had lain some Time flat on their Faces, Signs were made for them to kneel, and some Questions were put to them, which they did not understand; nor could they, on the other Hand, make the Natives sensible, that they intended to have gone to *Japan*; for they call that Country *Jeenare*, or *Jirpon*. The Commander perceiving he could make nothing of all they said, caused a Cup of Arak^a to be given each of them, and sent them back to their Tent, ordering their Conductors to let him see their Provisions; which having viewed, an Hour after they brought them Rice boiled in Water; but believing they were almost starved, gave them not much, for Fear it should do them Hurt.

AFTER Dinner, they came with Ropes in their Hands, which greatly surprized the *Dutch*, imagining they intended to strangle them: But their Fear vanished, on seeing them run towards the Wreck, to draw ashore what might be of use to them. At Night they gave them more Rice to eat; and their Master having made an Observation, found they were in the Island of *Quelpaert*, which is in thirty-three Degrees thirty-two Minutes of Latitude^b.

*The Wreck
secured*

THESE People were employed all the nineteenth in getting ashore the sad Remains of the Wreck, drying the Cloaths, and burning the Wood, to get the Iron, being very fond of that Metal. Beginning now to grow somewhat familiar, they went to the Commander of the Forces, and Admiral of the Island, who was also come-down, and presented each with a Prospective-Glass, and a Pot of Red-Wine, besides the Captain's Silver Cup, found among the Rocks. They liked the Liquor so well, that they drank till they were very merry; but returned the Silver Cup, with many Tokens of Friendship.

THE twentieth they made an End of burning all the Wood of the Ship, and saving the Iron; During which Time, the Fire they made coming to two Pieces of Cannon loaded with Ball, they

^a We call it Rack.

^b Hamel, as before, p. 575, & seq.

*Voyage to
Quelpaert.*

gave so great a Report, that they all fled, and durst not go near the Vessel, till the *Dutch* had assured them, by Signs, that they need not fear the like Accident any more. This Day they brought them Rice twice, to eat. Next Morning the Commander gave them to understand, by Signs, that they must bring before him whatever they had saved in their Tent, in order to be sealed; which was done in their Presence. Meanwhile certain Persons being brought to him, who had converted to their own Use, some Iron, Hides, and other Things saved out of the Wreck, were immediately punished before them, to let them see, that their Design was not to wrong them of any of their Goods. Each of the Thieves had thirty or forty Strokes on the Soles of his Feet, with a Cudgel six Foot long, and as thick as a Man's Arm. This Punishment was so severe, that some of their Toes dropped-off.

Sent up

ABOUT Noon they were given to understand, that they must depart. Those who were well had Horses provided for them, and the Sick were carried in Hammocks. They set-forward, attended by a numerous Guard of Horse and Foot; and travelling four Leagues, came at Night to a little Town called *Tadiane*; where, after a slender Repast, they were carried into a Warehouse much like a Stable. The twenty-second, at Break of Day, they departed, in the same Order as before, and travelled to a little Fort, near which there were two Galliot. Here they halted to dine, and at Night came to the Town of *Meggan*, or *Mokso*^a, where the Governor of the Island resides. They were all conducted to the Square before the Town-House, where about three thousand Men stood under-Arms; some of whom coming forwards, gave them Water to drink in Dishes; but being armed after a terrible Manner, the *Dutchmen* imagined their Design was to kill them. Their very Habit increased their Fear, for it had somewhat frightful, which is not seen in *China*, or *Japan*.

To the Governor.

THEIR Secretary, accompanied with some others, was carried to the Governor. When they had lain a-while prostrate, a Sign was made to the rest to do the same, near a Sort of Balcony before the House, where he sat like a King. After this, he caused them to be asked, by Signs, whence they came, and whither they were bound. They answered, that they were *Hollanders*, and bound for *Nangasaki* in *Japan*. Thereupon he signified, by bowing his Head a little, that he understood something of what they said. Then he ordered them to pass in Review by four and four at a Time; and having put the same Question to each of them, ordered them to be carried to the same House, where the King's Uncle, who

had attempted to usurp the Throne, had been confined, and died.

1653.
Hamel.

As soon as they were all in, the House was beset with armed Men. They had a daily Allowance of twelve Ounces of Rice a Man, and the same Quantity of Wheaten Meal, but very little besides, and so ill-dressed, that they could not eat it. Thus their common Meals were for the most Part only Rice, Meal, and Salt, with Water to drink. The Governor, who was seventy Years of Age, was a very understanding Man, and in good Esteem at Court. When he dismissed them, he made Signs, that he would write to the King to know his Pleasure concerning them, but that it would be a considerable Time before he could receive an Answer, because the Distance was fourscore Leagues, all but ten, by Land; they therefore begged him to order, that they might have Flesh sometimes, and other Kinds of Victuals. They also obtained Leave for six of them to go abroad every Day, by Turns, to take the Air, and wash their Linen. He did them the Honour often to send for, and make them write something before him, both in his own, and the *Dutch* Language. By this Means they began to understand some Words. As he was pleased sometimes to discourse with, and divert them with little Amusements, they began to conceive Hopes of getting-over one Day to *Japan*. He took such Care of their Sick, that, says the Author, we may affirm we were better treated by that Idolater, than we should have been among Christians.

*Are closely
confined,*

*But kindly
used,*

THE twenty-ninth of October, the Secretary, Master, and Surgeon's Mate, were carried before the Governor, where they found a Man sitting who had a great red Beard. The Governor asked them who they took that Man to be? And having told him they supposed he was a *Dutchman*, he fell a laughing, and said they were mistaken, for he was a *Korelian*. After some farther Discourse, the Man, who till then had been silent, asked them in *Dutch*, who they were, and of what Country? They returned an Answer, adding an Account of their Misfortune. Then taking the Boldness to ask him the same Questions, in their Turn, he said, his Name was *John Wetlevree*, that he was born at *Riip*^b in *Holland*, from whence he came as a Volunteer in 1626, a-board the Ship *Hollandia*: That next Year going to *Japan* in the *Ouderkerk* Frigate, the Wind drove them on the Coast of *Korea*: That wanting Water, and being one of those who were commanded ashore to get Provisions, he and two more, named *Theodorick Gerard*, and *John Pieters*, had been taken by the Inhabitants, and killed seventeen or eighteen Years before in

*They went
with*

*A Dutch
man,*

^a In the Original, *Mocxo*.

^b *Riip* is a great Village in North-Holland.

*Voyage to
Quelpaert.*

the Wars, when the *Tartars* invaded *Korea*: a That he was fifty-eight Years of Age, and that his Abode was in the capital City of *Korea*, whence the King had sent him, to know who they were, and what had brought them into his Dominions. He added, that he had often asked Leave of the King to go-over to *Japan*, without ever obtaining any other Answer, than that he must never expect it, unless he had Wings, and could fly thither: That the Custom of the Country was, to detain all Strangers, but that they wanted for nothing, being provided with Diet and Cloaths as long as they lived.

*Sent as In-
terpreter.*

THIS was no pleasing News to the *Dutchmen*: But the Joy of finding so good an Interpreter dispelled their Melancholy. Yet he had so forgotten his Mother-Tongue, that they had much to do at first to understand him; but he recovered it again in a Month's Time. The Governor having caused all their Depositions to be taken in Form, sent them to Court, and bade them be of good Cheer, for that they should have an Answer in a short Time. Mean-while he daily bestowed new Favours on them, giving Leave to *Wettevee*, and the Officers who came with him, to see them at any Time, and acquaint him with their Wants.

*Very good
Governor.*

THE Beginning of *December* a new Governor came, their Benefactor's three Years being expired. It would be hard to express the Kindness he shewed them at his Departure, inasmuch that seeing them ill-provided against Winter, he caused two Pair of Shoes, a Coat well-lined, and a Pair of Stockings of Skins to be made for each of them. He likewise treated them nobly, declaring that he was sorry it had not been in his Power to send them over to *Japan*, or carry them with him to the Continent. He added, that they ought not to be troubled at his going-away, because, being at Court, he would use all his Endeavours to obtain their Liberty, or have them carried thither. He restored them the Books they had saved, with some other Parcels of Goods, giving them, at the same Time, a Bottle of precious Oil. He likewise got the new Governor to mend their Allowance, which he had reduced to Rice, Salt, and Water.

*A very bad
one.*

BUT after that Lord's Departure, which was in *January* 1654, they were much worse used than before, for Barley was given them instead of Rice, and Barley-Meal in Place of Wheat; the first of which they were forced to sell, to procure other Food. This hard Usage tempted them to think of making their Escape in the approaching Spring, and the rather, as the King's Order did not come for carrying them up to Court. After long consulting how they might seize on a Boat in a dark Night, at length six of them resolved to execute this Design about the

End of *April*: But one of the Gang having gotten a-top of the Wall, in order to see where the Bark lay, was discovered by some Dogs, whose Barking alarmed the Guards.

THE Beginning of *May*, the Master going abroad with five others, as he was walking, observed, at a little Hamlet near the City, a Bark well-fitted up, without any-body to guard it. He presently sent one of his Company to get a little Boat, and some short Planks. Then making each Man drink a Draught of Water, he went aboard, without taking-care for any more. Whilst they were labouring to draw the Bark over a little Shoal that was near it, some of the Inhabitants discovered their Design; and one of them running-out with a Musket, went-into the Water to oblige them to return: Yet that did not hinder them from proceeding, except one, who not being able to get-up to the rest, was forced to go-back to Land. The other five attempting to hoist the Sail, both Mast and Sail fell into the Water. They soon got Things to Rights again, with much Labour; but as they endeavoured a second Time to hoist Sail, the End of the Mast broke-off short, and could not possibly be mended. These Delays giving the Natives Time to get into another Bark, they soon overtook the Fugitives; who, notwithstanding their Weapons, nimbly boarded them, hoping to make themselves Masters of the Vessel: But finding it full of Water, and unfit for Service, they all submitted.

BEING carried before the Governor, he caused them to be laid flat on the Ground, and their Hands chained to a great Log: Then the rest being brought also bound and manacled, the Prisoners were asked, whether they were privy to their Flight? This all the six positively denying, *Wettevee* was set to examine what their Design was: And they answering, it was no other, but to go to *Japan*, *How durst you*, said the Governor, *attempt that Passage without Bread and Water?* They replied, *they had chosen rather to expose themselves, once for all, to the Danger of Death, than to die every Moment.* Hereupon the unfortunate Wretches had each twenty-five Strokes given him on the bare Buttocks, with a Cudgel a Fathom long, four Fingers broad, and an Inch thick, being flat on the Side that strikes, and round on the other. These Strokes were so unmercifully laid-on, that the Sufferers were forced to keep their Beds a Month; and though the rest were unbound, yet they were confined, and strictly guarded Day and Night.

QUELPAERT, which the Natives call *Sebe-* sure, lies twelve or thirteen Leagues South of the Coast of *Korea*, and is fourteen or fifteen Leagues in Compass. On the North-Side of it is a Bay, where several Barks lie, and from whence they sail

1653.
Hamel.

Some attempt
to escape.

Taken, and
punished.

Quelpaert
described.

*Travels in
Korea.*

fail for the Continent: Which is of very dangerous Access to those unacquainted with it, on Account of the hidden Rocks, and that there is but one Road where Ships can anchor and tide under Shelter; for in all other Places they are often driven over to the Coast of *Japan*. The Island is quite surrounded with Rocks, but abounds in Horses and Cattle; yet these paying great Duties to the King, the Natives are very poor, and despised by the Inhabitants of the Continent. In this Island, there is a Mountain of a vast Height, covered with Woods; besides several small Hills, which are naked, interspersed with Vales abounding in Rice ^a.

2. *Their Journey to the Capital of Korea, and other Adventures.*

Sent for to Court: The Road thither: Arrive at the Capital: Entered in the Guards: Carested by many. A strong Castle. Severe Cold. Attempt of two unlucky to the rest. Shipwreck on Quelpaert. The Dutch in Danger. Banished from Court: Are hardly used by the Governors: Get Leave to beg.

*Sent for to
Court.*

THE latter End of *May*, Orders came to carry them up to Court. Six or seven Days after, they put them into four Boats, with Fetters on their Feet, and one Hand made fast to a Block, to prevent their leaping into the Water, which otherwise they might easily have done, all the Soldiers being Sea-sick. After two Days struggling with contrary Winds, they were put-back, and their Irons being taken-off, returned to their former Prison at *Quelpaert*. Four or five Days after, being shipped again betimes in the Morning, towards Evening they got close-up to the Continent; and having lain all Night in the Road, landed next Morning, where their Chains were taken-off, but their Guards doubled. Presently Horses were brought, to carry them to the City *Hey-nam*, where they all met again, having been separated at Sea, and landed in several Places.

*The Road
thither,*

THE Morning following they came to the Town of *Jebam*; where their Gunner, who had never enjoyed Health since the Shipwreck, died, and was buried, by the Governor's Order. Next Night they came to the City *Nadioo*; the Day following to *Sanfiang*; thence to *Tongap*, after crossing a high Mountain, on the Top whereof is the spacious Fort called *Ilpam-Sanfiang*. Thence they travelled to the City *Teyn*, and next Day

having baited at the little Town of *Kuniga*, at Night came to the great Town of *Khin-tyo*, where formerly the King kept his Court, and at present the Governor of the Province of *Thillado* resides. It is a City of great Trade, and very famous in that Country, though a Day's Journey from the Sea. Going thence, they lay at *Jesan*, the last Town of the same Province; then at the little Town of *Gunun*, next at *Jensan*, and lastly at *Konsio*, the Residence of the Governor of the Province of *Tiongfiando*. Next Day they crossed a great River, and entered upon the Province of *Sengado*, in which *Sior*, the Capital of *Korea*, is seated.

1653.
Hamel.

AFTER lying many Days in several Places, they crossed a River as wide as the *Maese* at *Dordrecht* ^b, and a League from thence arrived at the City of *Sior* ^c. They computed the Distance seventy-five Leagues, from their Landing to this City, all the Way Northward, only a little inclining to the West. Here for two or three Days they were lodged all in one House, and then removed into little Huts, three or four together, to remain with the *Chinese*, who were settled there. Being carried in a Body before the King, he examined them, by Means of *Wettevree*. After which they humbly beseeched his Majesty to send them over to *Japan*, that with the Assistance of the *Dutch* there, they might one Day return to their own Country. The King told them it was not the Custom of *Korea* to suffer Strangers to depart the Kingdom; but promised, at the same Time, to provide them with all Necessaries. Then he ordered them to do such Things before him as they were most expert at, as Singing, Dancing, and Leaping. After which causing Meat to be set before them, he gave to each two Pieces of Cloth, to cloath them after the *Korean* Fashion.

NEXT Day they were all carried to the General of the Forces, who ordered *Wettevree* to tell them, that the King had admitted them among his Life-Guard, and, as such, would allow them seventy *Kattis* of Rice a Month. Hereupon each had a Paper given him, in which was set-down his Name, his Age, and his Country; what Profession he followed before, and what he now was, all in their Character, sealed with the King's Great Seal, and the General's; which is nothing but the Print of an hot Iron. Together with this Commission, they delivered to each a Musket, Powder, and Ball, with Orders to give a Volley before the General every first and fourth Day of the Month; to be always ready to march into the

Entered in
the Guards.

^a *Hamel*, as before, p. 577, & seqq.

^b Or *Dordt*.

^c It appears from the Map, that there is no *r* in the *Korean* Language; at least that there is no Name of a City with that Letter in it, provided the Names be written by the Missioners, in the *Korean* Language: Yet in this Journal we meet with two or three Names more, wherein the *r* occurs. On Account of this Difference of Names, and for want of an Observation of the Latitude, there is no finding this Capital, or any of the other Cities, in the Map.

Field

*Travels in
Korea.*

Field with him, whether the King went, or upon any other Account. In Spring and Autumn that General reviews his Troops three Times a Month; the Soldiers likewise exercise as often in private. A *Chinese* and *Wettevree* were appointed to command them, the former as Serjeant; the other was to have an Eye over them, and teach the Customs of the *Koreans*.

*Carested by
many.*

MOST of the great Men, out of Curiosity, invited them to dine at their Houses, to see them exercise, shoot, and dance, after the *Dutch* Manner. But, above all, their Wives and Children were eager to view them, because the common People of *Quelpaert* had spread a Report that they were of a monstrous Race, and, when they drank, were obliged to tuck-up their Noses behind their Ears. Hence the People of Fashion at *Sior* were amazed to see them better shaped than their Countrymen; above all, they admired the Fairness of their Complexion. They so thronged to see them, that, at first, they could scarce walk the Streets, or be quiet at Home. At length the General put a Stop to this, forbidding all Persons whomsoever to go near them without his Leave; the rather, because the very Slaves of great men took the Liberty to fetch them out of their Chambers, to make Sport with.

*A strong
Castle.*

IN *August*, a *Tartar* Envoy arriving to demand the usual Tribute, the King was forced to send them to a great Fort, six or seven Leagues from *Sior*, to be kept there till the Ambassador departed, which was the Beginning of next Month. This Fort stands on a Mountain called *Numma San-siang*, which is three Hours Work to ascend. It is so strong, that the King himself retires thither in Time of War; and most of the great Men of the Kingdom live there. It is always furnished with three Years Provision for a great Number of People.

Severe Cold.

ABOUT the End of *November* the Cold was so vehement, that the River was frozen, and three hundred Horses loaded passed-over it. The General concerned to see the Cold they endured, informed the King, who ordered some Hides, for the most Part rotten, which they had saved from the Shipwreck, to be distributed among them, that they might sell them, and buy some Cloathing. Two or three, with the Money they got by these Hides, purchased a little Hut for nine or ten Crowns; chusing rather to endure Cold than to be continually tormented by their Landlords sending them to the Mountains, two or three Leagues distant, to fetch Wood. The rest having clothed themselves the best they could, were forced to pass the Remainder of the Winter as they had often done before.

THE *Tartar* Ambassador returning in *March*, 1655, they were forbidden, as before, under severe Penalties, to stir-out of Doors. But the Day he set forward, *Henry Fans*, their Master, and *Henry John Bos*, a Gunner, under Pretence of going for Wood, resolved to meet him on the Way. As soon as he appeared at the Head of his Troops, they laid-hold of his Horse's Reins with one Hand, and with the other turned aside their *Korean* Habit, to let him see they were clad after the *Dutch* Manner underneath. This, at first, caused a great Confusion among the Multitude, and the Ambassador asked them earnestly, who they were; but they could never make him understand them: However, he ordered them to follow him. At Night he caused Enquiry to be made for some-body to explain what they said to him; and hearing of *Wettevree*, sent for him in Haste. That Interpreter having advertised the King, a Council was held, where it was resolved to make the Ambassador a Present, in order to stifle the Matter from coming to the *Khan's* Ear.

THE two unhappy *Dutchmen* were brought back to *Sior*, and put in Prison, where, in a short Time, they died; but whether of a violent or natural Death, was unknown to their Countrymen, who were never allowed to see them afterwards. As soon as this Affair was noised abroad, they were carried before the Council of War to be examined; and though they declared themselves no way privy to their Companions' Design, yet each of them was sentenced to receive fifty Bastonados for not giving Notice of their going-out. But the King remitted this Punishment; saying, they were to be considered as poor Wretches cast into his Country by Storms, rather than as Out-laws who came with an Intent to plunder. Hereupon they were sent home again; but with an Injunction not to stir abroad without his Majesty's Orders.

IN *June* the General sent their Interpreter to acquaint them, that a Vessel being run a-ground on the Island of *Quelpaert*, and *Wettevree* too old to perform the Journey, three of them, who best understood the *Korean* Language, should prepare to set-out to bring an Account of the Wreck. In Pursuance of this Order, the Assistant, the Pilot's Mate, and a Gunner, were chosen, and set-forwards two Days after.

THE *Tartar* Ambassador coming again in *August*, they were commanded, under Pain of severe Punishment, not to stir out of their Quarters till three Days after he was gone. The Day before he came, they received Letters from their Companions, giving an Account, that they were

^a *Hamel*, p. 579, & seq. ^b Meaning the Emperor of *China*, who was a *Tartar*. In the Original, instead of *Khan*, or *Han*, it is written *Cham*, or *Kham*, according to the old erroneous Way.

*Travels in
Korea.*

*The Dutch
in Danger.*

*Banished
from Court.*

*Are hardly
used*

closely confined on the Southermost Borders of a the Kingdom, to the End, that if the great *Khân* had been informed of the two unhappy Fellows who were dead, and should demand the rest, he might be told, they were all three cast-away going to the Island *Quelpaert*.

THE Ambassador came again towards the End of the Year; so that although the great *Khân* had sent twice into *Korea*, since that unfortunate Attempt of two of their Companions, without making any Mention of it, yet most of the great Men used all their Endeavours with the King to destroy them. The Council sat three Days upon this Affair; but the King, his Brother, the General, and some others, were not for taking such Measures. The General proposed, that each of them should fight two *Koreans* with the same Weapons; alledging, that the King would thus get-rid of them, without putting it in the Power of any to say, that he had murdered poor Strangers. This Intelligence was secretly conveyed to them by some charitable Persons. And soon after, the King's Brother passing by their Quarters, as he was going to the Council, of which he was President, they fell prostrate at his Feet, and implored his Favour; which so moved him to Compassion, that he solicited strongly in their Behalf; insomuch, that they owed their Lives solely to the King and him. This giving Offence to many Persons, to prevent the Designs of such who might attempt to destroy them, and keep them from being seen by the *Tartars*, it was thought-fit to banish them into the Province of *Thillado*, with an Allowance from the King of fifty Pounds of Rice a Month.

ACCORDINGLY, in *March*, 1657, they departed on Horseback from *Sior*, in Charge of a Serjeant, accompanied by their Acquaintance as far as the River, a League from the City, where they took their Leave of *Wettevree*. They passed through the same Towns they had seen in their Way to the Court; and coming to lie at *Jeam*, set-out next Morning, and, about Noon, arrived at a great Town called *Diusiong*, or *Thillapening*, commanded by a large Citadel. The *Penigse*, who is Chief in the Absence of the Governor, resides there, and has the Title of Colonel of the Province. Being delivered to him with the King's Letters, the Serjeant was dispatched to fetch their three Companions who had been sent away the Year before, and were twelve Leagues off, where the Vice-Admiral commanded. They were lodged together in a Public-House, making in all thirty-three Persons.

In *April* they brought them some Hides that had been left-behind at *Quelpaert*, which was

but eighteen Leagues distant. The only Business they were charged with, was to pull-up the Grass that grew in the Square before the Castle twice a Month, and to keep it clean. The Governor, who was very good to them, as well as all the Citizens, being obliged to go to Court to answer some Accusations, was in Danger of his Life: But being well-beloved by the People, and favoured by the Grandees, on account of his Family, he came-off with Honour. The Governor who succeeded him was more rigid, obliging them to fetch their Wood, which used to be brought them, from a Mountain three Leagues off: But an Apoplexy delivered them from him in *September* following.

YET they fared no better under the next, who came in *November*: For when they asked him for Cloaths (which were then worn-out with carrying Wood) or any Thing else, he answered, that the King had given him no Orders as to that Point; that he was only obliged to furnish their Allowance of Rice, and that for other Wants it was their Business to provide for themselves. They therefore presented him with a Petition, for Leave to beg, each in his Turn, representing, that they could not get their Living any longer by carrying Wood, because they were naked, and that their Labour would yield nothing but a little Salt^a and Rice. He granted their Request; and, in a short Time, they were provided against the Cold.

AT the Beginning of the Year 1658, a new Governor coming, afflicted them with new Crof-fes. He forbid them to go-abroad, profering, if they would work for him, to give each three Pieces of Cotton Cloth. But this they respectfully declined, knowing they should wear-out more Cloaths in his Service than what he would furnish them with. At the same Time, some of them falling-ill of a Fever, (the very Thoughts of which Disease terrifies the Natives) he consented, that they should beg in Companies; provided they were not absent above a Fortnight or three Weeks, and that they neither went towards the Court, nor *Japan*. The other half, who remained at home, he ordered, should look-to the Sick, and take-care to pull-up the Grass in the Square^b.

3. Their hard Usage, and the Escape of eight to Japan.

King of Korea dies. A great Famine. The Dutch parted: Get Leave to beg. A kind Governor. Three Comets. Ease of the Dutch disturbed by severe Governors. Some hire a Bark, and escape: Get-out to Sea: Desery Japan.

^a They got no more than a Handful of Salt for running a Mile and half.

^b Hamel, p. 581, & seq. pan.

1658.
Hamel.

DESCRIPTION of KOREA.

337

Travels in
Korea.

pan. *The Island Gotto. Are carried ashore. a*
Sail to Nangasaki. Received by the Factors.
Return to Holland.

King of Ko-
rea d. i.

IN April the King died, and his Son succeeded him, with the Consent of the great *Khân*. They went-on in their Trade of Begging, particularly among the religious Men, who were very charitable, being never weary of hearing their Adventures, and the Customs of other Countries.

A great Fa-
mine.

THE Governor, who arrived in 1660, was so kind to them, that he often declared, if it was in his Power, he would send them into their own Country, or at least to some Place where the *Hollanders* frequented. This Year there happened such a Drought, that all Sorts of Provisions were very scarce. The next was yet more miserable, abundance of People being famished to Death, and the Roads full of Robbers; but the King vigorously pursued them. Acorns, Pine-Apples, and other wild Fruit, were all the Support of the People. The Famine was so great, that Villages were plundered, and some of the King's Stores broken open: Yet those Disorders being committed by the Slaves of great Men, none were punished for them. This Calamity lasted all the Year 1662, and the following felt some Share of it. The Place where the *Dutch* were, being no longer able to furnish them with Provision, the Governor, about the End of February 1663, by Order from Court, distributed them into three Towns: Twelve he sent to *Sayfiano*, five to *Siunfchien*, and as many to *Namman*, sixteen Leagues beyond; their Number, at this Time, being reduced to twenty-two. This Separation, which at first afflicted them, proved the Means of the Escape of the Author, and his Companions.

The Dutch
parted.

THEY set forwards on Foot, carrying the Sick, and what Baggage they had, on the Horses allowed them, and lay all in the same Towns the first and second Night. The third Day they came to *Siunfchien**, where the five assigned to that Place were left. Next Day they lay in a Country-House, and setting-out early in the Morning, came about Nine to *Sayfiano*, where their Conductors delivered them to the Governor, or Admiral of the Province of *Thellado*, who resides there. This seemed to be a very worthy Lord: But five Days after he was succeeded by another, who proved their Scourge. The greatest Favour he granted them, was Leave to go cut Wood fit to make Arrows for his Men, who had nothing to do but to learn to shoot, the great Men striving who shall keep the ablest Archers.

WINTER drawing-on, they petitioned the Governor for Permission to seek for Cloathing; and he gave them Leave to be absent, half at a Time, for three Days. This Liberty proved very beneficial to them, because the great Men, who had Compassion on them, favoured their Sallies; so that they were sometimes allowed to be a Month abroad. Whatever they got, was shared in common. This continued till the Governor was called to Court, where the King declared him General of his Army, which is the second Employment in the Kingdom. His Successor eased them of all their Burdens, and ordered, that they should be as well treated as their Countrymen, who were in the other Towns. Thus they were only obliged to pass Muster twice a Month, to keep House in their Turns, and to ask Leave when they wanted to go-abroad; or at least give the Secretary Notice, that they might know where to find them.

1663.

Hamel.

Get Leave to
beg.

THIS Governor, besides other Favours, often treated them, and pitying their Misfortune, would ask, *why, being so near the Sea, they did not attempt to pass-over to Japan?* They said, *they durst not venture to do a Thing so contrary to the King's Will;* adding, *that they knew not the Way, nor had any Vessel.* He replied, *there were Barks enough along the Coast.* The *Dutchmen* alledged, that they did not belong to them, and that if they missed their Aim, they should be punished as Thieves and Deserters. The Governor laughed at their Scruples, not imagining they talked after that Manner only to prevent Suspicion; and that all their Thoughts, Day and Night, were employed in contriving how to seize a Bark. The late Governor had not enjoyed his new Honour above six Months, when being accused to the King of having put to Death several Persons, as well Nobles as Commoners, on very slight Occasions, he was condemned to receive fourscore and ten Strokes of a Cudgel on his Shin-Bones, and to be banished for ever.

A kind Gen-
tlemen.

TOWARDS the End of the Year a Comet appeared, and after that two at once: The first was seen in the South-East, for about two Months: The other in the South-West, but their Tails were opposite to each other. The Court was so much alarmed at it, that the King caused the Guards to be doubled in all his Ports, and a-board his Ships: He also caused his Fortresses to be furnished with Provision, and warlike Stores: He made all his Forces, both Horse and Foot, exercise every Day, expecting an Invasion from some of his Neighbours; infomuch

* Pronounced *Syunfkyen*.

*Travels in
Korea.*

that he forbid making any Fire at Night in a those Houses which might be seen from Sea. The Commonalty spent all they had, keeping only as much as would serve to subsist them with Rice; because they had seen the same Signs when the Tartars over-ran their Country. They remembered likewise, that some such Thing had appeared before the Japanese declared War against them. Where-ever they met the Hollanders, they never failed to ask, what they thought of Comets in their Country. Their Answer was, that they presaged some signal Judgment, generally the Plague, War, or Famine, and sometimes all three; which, says the Author, they believed, having had Experience of it themselves.

*Ease of the
Dutch*

As they lived much at Ease all the Year 1664, and the next, their whole Endeavours were employed to make themselves Masters of a Bark, but without Success. Sometimes they rowed along the Shore in a little Boat, which served them to get their Living; and sometimes round the small Islands, to see if any Thing would fall-out, which might forward their Escape. Their Countrymen, who were in the two other Towns, came every now-and-then to see them; and they repaid their Visits, according as it pleased their Governors. They were patient under the greatest Severities, thinking it a great Mercy that they enjoyed their Health, and a Subsistence during that long Captivity. In the Year 1666, they lost their Benefactor, who was promoted to the prime Dignities at Court, in Reward for his good Actions. It is incredible how much Good he did to all Sorts of People, indifferently, during his two Years Administration, which gained him the Love of all, as well as the Esteem of his Prince, and the Nobility. He repaired public Structures, cleared the Coasts, and increased the Marine Forces.

Disturbed by

THEY were without a Governor for three Days after his Departure, so many being allowed the Successor for chusing a happy Minute^a, by Means of some Diviner, to enter upon his Employment. This Man, to other Severities, would oblige them continually to mould Clay. This they refused, alledging, that they ought to be allowed what Time they had to spare from their own Affairs, to get something to cloath themselves, and supply their other Wants; that the King had not sent them to work, or if they must be so used, it was better for them to quit his Allowance, and desire to be sent to Japan, or some other Place, where their Countrymen resorted^b.

*Severe Go-
vernors.*

To this he made no Answer, but ordered them to be gone, threatening to find a Way to make them comply. But he was luckily pre-

vented; for a few Days after, being on-board a very fine Ship, some Fire accidentally fell into the Powder (which is kept in a Room before the Mast) and blew-up the Prow, killing five Men. The Governor believing he could conceal that Accident, gave no Account of it to the Intendant of the Province; but he was mistaken, for the Fire being seen by one of the Spies, whom the King keeps on the Coasts, as well as in the Heart of the Country, to be informed of all that passes, he gave Notice thereof to the Intendant, who sent an Account of it up to Court, whither the Governor was immediately summoned, and, by Sentence of the Judges, received fourscore and ten Strokes on his Shin-Bones, and was banished for ever.

1666.
Hamel.

THUS in July they had another Governor, who behaving like the last, required of them daily an hundred Fathom of Mat; and when they represented it as a Thing not to be done, he told them, he would find some other Employment for them; which he had done, but that he fell sick, although, besides their own Affairs, they were obliged to pull-up the Grass in the Square of Penighe, and then to fetch home Wood fit for Arrows. These Considerations made them resolve to take Advantage of their Tyrant's Indisposition, and to get a Bark at any Rate. For this Purpose they employed a Korean, whom they had often relieved in his Distress, to buy them one, under Pretence that they wanted to go beg Cotton in the neighbouring Islands, promising him a good Share when they returned. Accordingly he bought a Bark of a Fisherman. The Seller perceiving it was for them, would have gone from his Bargain, at the Instigation of some who told him, it was to make their Escape, and that in Case they did, he would be put to Death: But being blinded with an Offer of double the Value, he consented.

As soon as the two Koreans were gone, they furnished the Vessel with Sails, Anchor, Rigging, Oars, and other Requisites, in order to set-out the first Quarter of the Moon, that being the fittest Season. They kept two of their Countrymen, who came to visit them, and sent to Namman for John Peter of Uries, an able Sailor, to steer their Vessel. Although their Neighbours had conceived some Jealousy of them, yet on the fourth of September, as the Moon was setting (the Time fixed for their Departure) they crept along the City-Wall, unperceived by anybody; carrying-off their Provision, which consisted of Rice, Pots of Water, and a Frying-Pan.

HAVING filled a Cask with fresh Water, in a little Island, which was within Cannon-Shot,

*Get-out to
Sea.*

^a The Chinese have the same Superstition.

^b Hamel, p. 582, & seqq.

they,

*Travels in
Korea.*

they, without any Noise, passed before the Vessels belonging to the City, and just opposite to the King's Frigates, keeping as far-off in the Channel as they could. The fifth in the Morning, being almost out at Sea, a Fisherman hailed them, but they would not answer, fearing it might be some advanced Guard to the Men of War that lay thereabouts. At Sun-rise the Wind falling, they plied their Oars. About Noon the Weather began to freshen, so that directing their Course by Guess, South-East, at Night they cleared the Point of *Korea*, and were no longer apprehensive of being pursued.

*Discovery Ja-
pan.*

THE sixth Day in the Morning, they found themselves very near the first Island of *Japan*; and the Wind still favouring them, came, without knowing it, before the Island of *Firando*, where yet they durst not put-in, because unacquainted with the Road. Besides, the *Koreans* had often told them, that there were no Isles to coast in the Way to *Nangasaki*; therefore holding on their Course with a cold Breeze, the seventh they ran-along abundance of Islands, which seemed to be numberless. At Night they thought to have anchored at a small Island, but the Sky appearing stormy, and perceiving abundance of Fires on every Side, they resolved to continue under-sail.

*The Island
Gotto.*

THE eighth in the Morning, they found themselves in the same Place from whence they set-forward the Night before, which they attributed to the Force of some Current. Hereupon they stood-out to Sea, but were soon obliged, by contrary boisterous Weather, to seek the Land again. After crossing a Bay, they came to an Anchor about Noon, without knowing the Country. Whilst they were dressing some Victuals, the Natives passed backwards and forwards close by them, without saying any Thing. About Evening the Wind being somewhat fallen, a Bark with six Men in it, each having two Knives at his Girdle, rowed close by them, and landed a Man opposite to the Place where they were. This made them weigh, and depart as fast as they could, making Use of their Oars, as well as Sails, to get-out of the Bay: But the Bark pursuing, soon overtook them. By making Use of their long Bambûs, they might easily have prevented their coming aboard; but observing several other Barks full of *Japanese* set-out from Shore, they gave themselves no farther Trouble.

*Are carried
ashore.*

THE Bark hailed them, and asking, by Signs, whither they would go, the *Dutch* let fly the Colours with the Arms of *Orange*, which they had provided for that Purpose, crying, *Holland, Nan-*

gasaki. Hereupon they made Signs for them to strike their Sail, which done, they carried two Men into their Bark, and asked them several Questions, without being understood. Their Arrival had so alarmed all the Coast, that not a Man was to be seen, but who was armed with two Swords. At Night a great Bark brought aboard them the third Man for Dignity in the Island; who perceiving they were *Hollanders*, gave them to understand, by Signs, that there were six *Dutch* Ships at *Nangasaki*, and that they were in the Island of *Gotto*, subject to the Emperor. They continued here three Days well-guarded, aboard their Bark. Mean-time Water, Wood, and Flesh, was brought them, with a Mat to cover them from Rain, which fell in great Abundance.

THE twelfth, being furnished with Provisions, to go to *Nangasaki*, they set-forward, accompanied by the Officer above-mentioned. He carried some Letters from the Emperor, and some Goods, being attended by two large Barks, and two little ones. Next Day, towards Evening, they saw the Bay of that City, and at Midnight anchored before it, where they found five *Dutch* Ships. Several Inhabitants of *Gotto*, as well as chief Men, did them many Kindnesses, without taking any Thing in Return. On the fourteenth they were all carried ashore, where the Company's Interpreters received them. Then their Answers to several Questions being taken-down in Writing, they were carried to the Governor's House, and about Noon brought before him. When they had satisfied his Curiosity, he much commended their Resolution in encountering so many Dangers to recover their Liberty.

AFTER this, he ordered the Interpreters to conduct them to their Commandant, Mynheer *William Volguers*, who received them very kindly; as did his Deputy, Mynheer *Nicholas Le Roy*, and in general all their Countrymen. The Governor of *Nangasaki*, who would have kept them a Year, caused them to be brought before him on the twenty-fifth of *October*; and after examining them over again, restored them to the Company's Director, who lodged them in his own House. A few Days after, they sailed for *Batavia*, where they arrived on the twentieth of *November*. At landing they delivered their Journal to the General, who gave them a very favourable Reception, and promised to put them aboard the Ships that were to sail from thence on the twenty-eight of *December*; which Vessels arrived at *Amsterdam* on the twentieth of *July*, 1668^a.

1668.

Hamel.

Sail to Nangasaki.

Received by the Factors.

Return to Holland.

^a Hamel, p. 585, & seq.

S E C T. II.

A Description of the Kingdom of Korea.

1. Its Situation and Extent, with the Manners of the Inhabitants.

Situation. Bounds. An open Sea. The Coasts. Intense Cold. Soil and Produce. Animals. Provinces. Inhabitants, their Character: Very pusillanimous. Diseases, Physicians. Great Smokers. Their Houses small, and low. Recreations. Travelling.

Situation.

THE Kingdom known to the Europeans by the Name of Korea, is, by the Natives, called *Tiozenkouk*, and sometimes *Kaoli*. It reaches from thirty-four to forty-four Degrees of North Latitude, being about one hundred and fifty Leagues ^a in Length from North to South, and seventy-five in Breadth from East to West. Hence the Natives represent it in Form of a long Square, like a playing Card: Nevertheless it has several Points of Land which run far-out into the Sea.

Bounds.

On the West, this Kingdom is divided from China by the Bay of *Nan-king*, but is joined to it on the North by a long and high Mountain, which is all that hinders Korea from being an Island. On the North-East it is bounded by the vast Ocean, where every Year a great Number of Whales are taken; some by the French and Dutch: Abundance of Herrings also are caught there in *December, January, February, and March*. Those taken in the two first Months are as large as what they have in *Holland*: Those they catch afterwards are smaller, and like the Dutch frying Herrings. Hence the Author, and his Companions, inferred, that there is a Passage above Korea, Japan, and Tartary ^b, which answers to the Straights of *Weigats*: For this Reason, they often asked the *Koresian* Seamen, who use the North-East Sea, what Lands were beyond them? And they all told them, they believed there was nothing that Way but a boundless Ocean.

An open Sea.

THOSE who go from Korea to China, embark in the uttermost Part of the Bay: For the Difficulty of passing the Mountain makes the Way by Land very troublesome in Summer, because of the wild Beasts; and in Winter, on Account of the excessive Cold: Yet in this Season the Bay may be crossed-over on the North-Side, being generally frozen hard enough to bear.

The Coasts.

THE Coasts being inclosed with Rocks, and

^a Sands, makes it difficult of Access, and dangerous for Strangers to approach it. Towards the South-East it is very near Japan, there being but twenty-five, or twenty-six Leagues Distance betwixt the Town of *Pousan* ^c in Korea, and that of *Osakko* in Japan. Betwixt them is the Island *Suissima*, which the *Koresians* call *Taymuta* ^d. It formerly belonged to them, but they exchanged it for that of *Quelpaert*, in a Treaty of Peace concluded with the *Japannese*.

1668.

Hamel.

^b THE Cold is so intense in Korea, that in the Year 1662, the Dutch being in the Monasteries on the Mountains, there fell such a prodigious Quantity of Snow, that they made Passages under it to go from House to House: To walk upon it, they wear small Boards, like Battledores, under their Feet, which hinder their sinking. By Reason of this excessive Cold, those who live on the Northern Coast feed only upon Barley, and that none of the best, for no Rice or Cotton can grow there. The better Sort of People have their Meal brought from the South.

Intense Cold.

THE rest of the Country is fruitful, and produces all the Necessaries of Life, especially Rice, and other Sorts of Grain. They have Hemp, Cotton, and Silk-Worms; but they know not how to work the Silk. There is also Silver, Lead, Tigers Skins, and the *Niss* Root. They have Store of Cattle, and make use of Oxen to till the Land. The Dutch met with Bears, Deer, wild Boars, Swine, Dogs, Cats, and several other Creatures; but never saw any Elephants there. The Rivers are often pestered with Alligators, or Crocodiles, of several Sizes: Some are eighteen or twenty Ells ^e long: The Eye is small, but very sharp; the Teeth placed like those of a Comb. When they eat, they only move the upper-Jaw. Their Back-Bone has sixty Joints. The Natives often told them, that three Children were once found in a Crocodile's Belly. Korea breeds abundance of Serpents, and venomous Creatures. As for Fowl, they have Plenty of Swans, Geese, Ducks, Herons, Storks, Eagles, Falcons, Kites, Pigeons, Woodcocks, Magpies, Daws, Larks, Lapwings, Pheasants, Hens, besides other Sorts not known in Europe.

Soil, and Produce.

Animals.

KOREA is divided into eight Provinces, containing three hundred and sixty Cities and Towns, without reckoning the Forts and Castles, which are all on the Mountains ^f.

Provinces.

THE *Koresians* are much addicted to Stealing, and so apt to cheat and lie, that there is no trusting of them. They think Over-reaching a good Action, and, therefore, Fraud is not infamous

Inhabitants, their Character.

^a Reckoning only fifteen to a Degree.

^b And the late Discoveries shew, that their Conjecture was well-grounded.

^c Doubtless, the *Few-shan* of *Regis*. See p. 326. a.

^d Or *Tavi-ma-tau*, as *Regis* writes it, in the same Place.

^e Dutch Ells, we presume.

^f Hamel, p. 587, & seq.

among

*Travels in
Korea.*

among them; yet the Law will redress a Man, who has been cheated in a Bargain. They are withal silly and credulous. The *Dutch* might have made them believe any Thing they would, because they are great Lovers of Strangers, but chiefly the religious Men. They are an effeminate People, and discover very little Courage; at least the *Hollanders* were informed so by several credible Persons, who beheld the Hayock the Emperor of *Japan* made among them, when he slew their King; and how they behaved, when the *Tartars* coming-over the Ice, seized the Kingdom. *Wetteoree*, who was an Eye-Witness to the Whole, assured them, that more *Koreans* died in the Woods, whither they fled, than were killed by the Enemy.

Very pusillanimous.

THEY are not ashamed of Cowardice, and lament the Misfortune of those who are obliged to fight. They have often been repulsed in attempting to plunder *European* Vessels, cast-on their Coast. They abhor Blood, and fly when they meet with any. They are much afraid of sick Folks, and particularly those who have contagious Distempers: Such they presently remove, putting them into little Straw-Hovels in the Middle of the Fields, where they see none but those who are to look after them: These give Notice to Passengers to keep-off; and when the sick Man has no Friends to take-care of him, others will rather let him die, than come near him. When any Town, or Village, is infected with the Plague, the Avenues to it are shut-up with a Hedge of Briars, and some are laid on the Tops of distempered Houses, that People may know them. Many medicinal Plants grow in the Country, but the People are not acquainted with them, and almost all the Physicians are employed by the Grandees; so that the Poor, who cannot be at that Charge, make-use of blind Men, and Conjurors, whom formerly they followed everywhere over Rivers and Rocks, and into the Idol Temples: But this Custom was abolished, by the King's Order, in the Year 1662.

*Diseases,
Physicians.*

Great Emulation.

BEFORE the *Tartars* subdued *Korea*, it was full of Luxury and Debauchery, the Natives giving themselves wholly-up to Eating, Drinking, and Leudness: But now the *Tartars* and *Japanese* tyrannize over them, they have enough to do to live when a Year proves bad, because of the heavy Tribute they pay to the former. Within these fifty or sixty Years, the *Japanese* taught them to plant Tobacco, which, till then, was unknown to them, and telling them the Seed came from *Nampankouk*^a, they often call it *Nampankoy*. They take so much at present, that there are very few of either Sex but

what smoke; and the very Children practise it at four or five Years of Age. When first brought them, they bought it for its Weight in Silver; and for that Reason they look-upon *Nampankouk* as one of the best Countries in the World^b.

THE poorer Sort have no Cloaths but what are made of Hemp, and pitiful Skins: But, to make amends, the Root *Nisi*^c grows there, in which they drive a great Trade to *China* and *Japan*^d.

THE Houses of the *Koreans* of Quality are^e stately, but those of the common Sort very mean; nor are they allowed to build as they please. No Man can cover his House with Tiles, unless he has Leave so to do; for which Reason most of them are thatched with Straw, or Reeds. They are parted from one another by a Wall, or else a Row of Stakes, or Palisados. They are built by fixing wooden Posts, or Pillars, in the Ground at certain Distances, and filling the Spaces between with Stone up to the first Story: The rest of the Structure is of Wood, plastered without, and covered on the Inside with white Paper glued-on. The Floors are vaulted, and in Winter they make a Fire underneath; so that they are always as warm as a Stove: The Floor^f is covered with Oil-Paper.

THEIR Houses are small, consisting of one^{Small and low} Story, and a Garret over it, where they lay-up their Provisions. They have seldom more Furniture than what may be absolutely necessary.

The Nobility have always an Apartment forwards, where they receive their Friends, lodge their Acquaintance, and divert themselves; there being generally, before their Houses, a large Square, or Bass-Court, with a Fountain, or Fish-Pond, and a Garden with covered Walks. Tradesmen, and the chief Citizens, have generally a Warehouse adjoining to their Mansion-House, where they keep their Goods, and treat their Friends with Tobacco and Arak. The Womens Apartment is in the most retired Part of the House, where none must approach them: Yet some Wives are allowed the Liberty of seeing People, and going to Feasts; but they sit by themselves, and facing their Husbands.

THERE are, in the Country, abundance of^{Recreations} Taverns, and Pleasure-Houses, to which the *Koreans* resort, to see common-Women dance, sing, and play-upon musical Instruments. In Summer, they take this Recreation in cool Groves, under close, shady Trees. They have no Inns to entertain Passengers, but he who travels goes and sits-down, at Night, near the Pales of the first House he comes at. Presently those^{Travelling} within bring him boiled Rice, and dress Meat enough for his Supper. He may stop thus at as

^a Or *Holland*, as is observed hereafter.

^b *Hamel*, p. 593, & seq.

^c This must be the *Jin-seng*.

^d *Hamel*, p. 588.

^e Perhaps, it should be the Ceiling, or Walls.

*Travels in
Korea.*

many Houses as he will: Yet, on the great Road to *Sior*, there are Inns, where those who travel on public Affairs have Lodging, and Diet, at the public Charge ^a.

2. Their Customs, and Learning.

Their Marriages. Condition of Wives. Duty of Children. Mourning for Parents. Their Funerals. Inheritance. Education of Children. Examinations for Places. Language, and Writing. Their Geography. Printing, Arithmetic. Account of Time.

*Their Mar-
riages.*

KINDRED are not allowed to marry within the fourth Degree. They make no Courtship, because they are married at eight or ten Years of Age; and the young Maids (unless they be only Daughters) from that Time, live in their Father-in-law's House, till they have learnt to get their Living, or to govern their Family. The Day a Man marries, he mounts on Horseback, attended by his Friends; and having rode about the Town, stops at the Bride's Door, where he is received by her Relations, who then carry her to his House, where the Marriage is consummated, without any other Ceremony.

*Condition of
Wives.*

A MAN may keep as many Women abroad as he can maintain, and repair to them, at any Time, without Scandal; yet none lives with him but his Wife. Noblemen, indeed, have two or three Women besides in the House; but they have nothing to do with the Management of the Family. To say the Truth, they make no great Account of their Wives, whom they use little better than Slaves. Although a Woman has borne her Husband a great many Children, it is in his Power to put her away whenever he pleases, on the slightest Pretence, and to take another: But the Woman has not the same Privilege, unless she can get it by Law. What is still harder, he can compel her to take, and maintain their Children. However, this unreasonable Custom helps to render the Country very populous.

*Duty of
Children.*

PARENTS are very indulgent to their Children, and, in Return, are much respected by them. They depend upon one-another's good Behaviour, and if one of them withdraws after an ill Action, the other does the like. It is not so with the Slaves, who have but little Regard for their Children, because they know they will be taken from them as soon as they are able to work, or do any Business ^a. If a Freeman lies with a Woman-Slave, the Children born of them are Slaves; and such whose Father and Mother

are both Slaves, belong to the Mother's Master ^b.

WHEN a Freeman dies, his Children mourn three Years, during which Time, they live as austere as religious Men: They are not capable of any Employment, and those who are in Posts must quit them. It is not lawful for them even to lie with their Wives; and, if they should have any Children born during the Mourning, they would not be accounted legitimate. It is not permitted them to be in a Passion, or to fight, much less to be drunk. The Mourning they wear, is a long hempen Robe, without any Thing under it, but a Sort of Sackcloth, made of twisted Thread, almost as thick as the Twine of a Cable. On their Hats, which are of green Reeds woven-together instead of an Hatband, they wear a hempen Cord. They never go without a great Cane, or Cudgel in their Hand, which serves to distinguish who they are in Mourning for, the Cane denoting the Father, and a Stick the Mother. During all this Time, they never wash, and, consequently, look like Mulattos.

As soon as any-one dies, his Kindred run about the Streets shrieking and tearing their Hair. They take special Care to bury him honourably, in some Part of a Mountain chosen by a Fortune-teller. They inclose every Corpse in two Coffins, two or three Fingers thick, put one within the other, to keep-out the Water, painting and adorning them according to their Ability. They generally bury their Dead in Spring and Autumn. Such as die in Summer, they place in a thatched Hut, raised on four Stakes, till Rice-Harvest is over. When they intend to bury them, they bring them back to the House, and put their Cloaths, with some Jewels, into the Coffin: Then after making merry all Night, they set-out at Break of Day with the Body. The Bearers sing, and keep Time as they go, whilst the Kindred and Friends of the Party make the Air ring with their Cries. Three Days after, these latter return to the Grave, where they make some Offerings, and then eating all together, are very merry. The meaner Sort only make a Grave five or six Foot deep; but the great Men have Sepulchres of Stone, on which are placed their Statues, with their Names, Qualifications, and Employments, cut underneath. Every Full-Moon they cut-down the Grass that grows-on the Grave, and offer new Rice there; that being their greatest Festival next to the new Year.

WHEN the Children have fully performed this Duty to their Parents, the eldest Son takes Possession of the House, with all the Lands depend-

1668.
Hamel.

*Mourning
for Parents.*

Their Funerals.

Inheritance.

^a Hamel, p. 592.

^b The same, p. 588.

*Travels in
Korea.*

ing on it. The rest is divided among the other a Sons; but the *Dutch* never heard, that the Daughters had any Share, because the Women carry nothing to their Husbands, but their Cloaths. When a Father is fourscore Years of Age, he declares himself incapable of managing his Estate, and resigns it up to his Children: Then the eldest taking Possession, builds a House, at the common Expence, for his Father and Mother, where he lodges, and maintains them, treating them with the greatest Respect.

*Education of
Children.*

THE Nobility, and Freemen in general, take great Care of the Education of their Children, putting them very young to learn to read and write. They use no Manner of Rigour in their Method of teaching, but manage all by fair Means. They give their Scholars an high Idea of Learning, and of the Worth of their Ancestors, telling them how honourable those are, who, by this Means, have raised themselves to great Fortunes, which breeds Emulation, and makes them studious. It is surprizing how much they improve, by such Exhortations, in expounding the Writings they give them to read, wherein all their Learning consists. Besides this private Study, there is, in every Town, a House, where the Nobility, according to ancient Custom, of which they are very tenacious, assemble the Youth, to make them read the History of their Country, and the Trials of great Men, who have been put to Death for their Crimes.

*Examina-
tions for
Places.*

THERE are Assemblies, likewise, kept yearly, in two or three Towns of each Province, where the Scholars appear to get Employments, either by the Pen, or the Sword. The Governors of Towns send able Deputies thither, to examine them, and chuse the best qualified; and, according to the Report made to them, they write to the King, who bestows Employments on those deemed worthy. The old Officers, who till then have only had civil, or military Commis- sions, at this Time use all their Endeavours to be employed in both Professions, to increase their Revenue. The aspiring to these Honours, is often the Ruin of the Candidates, because of the Presents they make, and Treats they give, to gain Reputation, and obtain Votes. Some also die by the Way, and most of them are satisfied with getting the Title of the Employment they aim at, thinking it Honour enough to have been designed for one.

*Language,
and Writ-
ing.*

THEIR Way of Writing, and their Arith- metic, are very hard to learn. They have many Words to express the same Thing. They some- times talk fast, and sometimes slow, especially their learned Men, and great Lords. They use three Sorts of Writing; the first like that of

China and *Japan*, which they use for printing their Books, and all public Affairs. The second is like the common Writing among *Europeans*: The great Men and Governors use it, to answer Petitions, and make Notes on Letters of Advice, or the like: The Commonalty cannot read this Writing. The third is more unpolished, and serves Women, and the common Sort. It is easier to write in this Character, than the other two, Names, and Things never before heard of, being noted-down with very curious Pencils. They have abundance of old Books, both printed, and manuscript, so choicely kept, that none but the King's Brother is trusted with them. Copies of them, with Cuts, are kept in several Towns, that in Case of Fire they may not be all destroyed.

As to their Knowledge of the World, their Authors affirm, that there are fourscore and four thousand several Countries; but few of them give Credit to what they write, saying, that then every little Island, and Shoal, must pass for a Country; and that it would not be possible for the Sun to give Light to so many in one Day. When the *Dutch* named some Kingdoms to them, they laughed, affirming, that they only talked of Towns, or Villages; for their Know- ledge of the Coasts reaches no farther than *Siam*, which is the Limit of their foreign Traf- fic. In Effect, they believe there are but twelve Kingdoms, or Countries, in the whole World, which once were all subject, and paid Tribute to *China*; but that they have shook off the Yoke since the Conquest of the *Tartars*, who, they say, are not able to subdue them. They call the *Tartar* ^a, *Tiekse*, and *Orankay*; and *Holland*, *Nampankeuk*; which is the Name the *Japanese* give to *Portugal*, and, therefore, not knowing the *Dutch*, they give them the same.

THEIR Almanacks are made in *China*, they themselves wanting Skill to make them. They print with Boards, or wooden Cuts, and lay one Cut to each Side of the Paper, and so strike-off a Leaf. They cast Accounts with little long Sticks, as the *Dutch* do with Counters. They know not how to keep Books of Accounts, but when they buy any Thing, set-down the Price under it, and write on it what they made of it, and so find what Profit, or Loss.

THEY reckon by Moons, and every third Year add one Moon. They have Conjurors, Di- viners, or Soothsayers, who assure them whether the Dead are at Rest, or not; and if the Place where they are buried is proper for them: In which Point they are so superstitious, that they often remove them two or three Times.

^a That is, the Emperor of *China*.

^b *Hamel*, p. 592, & seq.

Trade of
Korea.

3. The Trade and Religion of Korea.

Trade of Korea. The Religion there. Monasteries and Temples. The Superiors. Married Priests. Nunneries.

Trade of
Korea.

THE Inhabitants of Korea have scarce any Trade, but with the *Japannese*, and the People of the Island of *Susima*^a, who have a Store-House in the South-Part of the Town of *Pousan*. They supply Korea with Pepper, sweet Wood, Alum, Buffalo's Horns, Goats, and Buck-Skins, besides other Commodities, which the *Chinese* and *Dutch* sell in *Japan*. In Exchange, they take the Product and Manufactures of the Country. The *Koreans* have also some Commerce in the Northern-Parts of *China*, in Linen, or Cotton Cloth; but it is very chargeable, because they travel only by Land, and on Horseback. None but the rich Merchants of *Sior* trade to *Pe-king*, and they are always three Months, at least, on the Road.

THERE is but one Sort of Weight and Measure throughout the Kingdom, but the Traders abuse it very much, notwithstanding all Precautions, and Orders of the Governors. They know no Money but their *Kasis*, and those pass only on the Frontiers of *China*. They pass Silver by Weight, in little Ingots, like those brought from *Japan*^b.

The Religion
there.

As for Religion, the *Koreans* have scarce any. The common People make odd Grimaces before the Idols, but pay them little Respect; and the great ones honour them much less, because they think themselves to be something more than an Idol: For when any of their Kindred, or Friends dies, they all appear to honour the dead Man at the Offering, which the Priest makes before the Image; and frequently travel thirty or forty Leagues to be present at this Ceremony, in order to express their grateful Remembrance, or Esteem, for some good Commander, or learned, religious Man. On Festivals, the People repairing to the Temple, every one lights a Bit of sweet Wood; then putting it into a Vessel for that Purpose, they offer it to the Idol, and placing it before him, make a low Bow, and depart. This is their Worship. For their Belief, they are of Opinion, that Good-doers shall be rewarded, and Evil-doers punished. They know nothing of Preaching, or Mysteries, and, therefore, they have no Disputes about Religion, all believing and practising the same Thing throughout the Kingdom. The Clergy offer Perfumes before

a their Idols twice a Day; and, on Festivals, all the Religious of a House make a Noise with Drums, Basons, and Kettles. 1668. Hamel.

THE Monasteries and Temples, which are very numerous, are built by the Contributions of the People, for the most Part on Mountains. Some of them contain five or six hundred Religious, whereof there are four thousand within the Liberties of some Towns. They are divided into Companies of ten, twenty, and sometimes thirty: The eldest governs, and, if any-one neglects his Duty, may cause the others to punish him with twenty or thirty Strokes on the Buttocks; but if the Offence be heinous, they deliver him up to the Governor of the Town they belong to. As every Man is at Liberty to become a Religious, Korea swarms with them, and the rather, because they may quit the Profession when they please: However, generally speaking, these Monastics are not much more respected than the Slaves, because of the great Taxes they are obliged to pay, and the Work they are forced to do.

Monasteries,
and Temples.

THEIR Superiors are in great Esteem, especially when learned, for they are equal with the Grandees, and called the *King's religious Men*, wearing (the Badge of) their Order over their Cloaths. They have the Power of judging as subaltern Officers, and make their Visits on Horseback, shave their Heads and Beards, must eat nothing that had Life, and are forbidden conversing with Women. Whoever breaks these Rules, receives seventy or eighty Strokes on the Buttocks, and is banished the Monastery. When they first receive the Tonsure, they impress a Mark on the Arm, which never wears off. They work for their Living, or follow some Trade: Some go a begging, but all have a small Allowance from the Governor. They bring-up Children in their Houses, whom they teach to read and write. If these Children consent to be shaved, they retain them in their Service, and receive what they earn. When their Master dies, they become free, and Heirs to all their Goods, mourning for them, as if they had been their Fathers.

The Superiors.

THERE is another Sort of religious Men, who, like the former, abstain from Flesh, and serve Idols; but they are not shorn, and may marry^c. They believe, by Tradition, that Mankind, originally, had only one Language; but that the Design of building a Tower to go-up to Heaven, caused the Confusion of Tongues. The Nobles much frequent the Monasteries, to divert themselves, either with common Women, which they find there, or others they carry with them,

Married Priests.

^a Or *Twi-ma-tau*, before called *Suiffima*, in this Place spelled *Ceuxima*. ^b Hamel, p. 594. ^c These are like the *Tau-tse* among the *Chinese* who are married, as the former correspond with the *Ho-shang*, who are not married. See before, p. 203, & seqq.

because

Travels in Korea.

because they are generally deliciously seated for a Prospect, and accommodated with fine Gardens, so that they might better be called Pleasure-Houses than Temples; but this is to be understood of the common Monasteries, where the religious Men love to drink hard.

Nunneries.

THERE were two Convents of religious Women in the City of *Sior*; one contained none but Maidens of Quality, the other those of the inferior Sort. They were all shorn, and observed the same Rules and Duties as the Men. They were maintained by the King and great Men: But three or four Years before the *Dutch* left *Korea*, his Majesty gave them Leave to marry.^a

4. Of the King and Government of Korea.

The King tributary; yet absolute: His chief Officers: State in going abroad. Petitions, how presented. Military Officers, and Soldiers. Shipping. The Revenue. Punishments for Rebels, and Traitors: Killing a Husband: Murder and Theft: For Adultery: Not paying Debts: Beating on the Shins, and Feet, Buttocks, and Calfs of the Legs.

The King tributary,

KOREA is tributary to the Eastern *Tartars*, who conquered it before they subdued *China*, from whence an Ambassador comes three Times a Year, to receive the Tribute, which the People pay in the Root *Nisi*. Upon his Arrival, the King goes out of Town, with all his Court, to receive him, and waits on him to his Lodging. He is treated every-where with such Respect, that he seems to be honoured more than the King himself. He is preceded by Musicians, Dancers, and Vaulters, who strive to divert him. During the Time he remains at Court, all the Streets, from his Lodging to the Palace, are lined with Soldiers, who stand within ten or twelve Foot one of the other. There are two or three Men, who have no other Employment but to pick-up Notes thrown-out of the Ambassador's Window, in order to be carried to the King, who desires to know what he is doing at all Times. That Prince studies all Manner of Ways to please this Officer, that he may make a favourable Report of him to the great *Khân* of *China*.^b

Yet absolute.

BUT although the King of *Korea* pays an Acknowledgment to the Emperor of *China*, yet his Power is absolute over his own Subjects. None of them, not the greatest Lords, have any Property in the Lands; their Revenues arising out of those Estates they hold of his Majesty, during

Pleasure, and from the great Number of their Slaves, for the *Dutch* knew some who had two or three hundred.

THE chief Officers, by Sea and Land, who make-up the King's Council, meet every Day at Court. They must wait till their Advice is asked, before they give it; and till they are appointed to manage any Business, must not meddle with it. These People have the first Places about the King, which they enjoy till fourscore Years of Age, provided they behave well. The same is practised in other inferior Employments at Court, which no Man quits, unless it be to rise. The Governors of Places, and subaltern Officers, are removed every three Years: But very few of them serve-out their Time, being cashiered for Misdemeanors on the Accusation of the Spies^c, which the King keeps in all Places^d.

WHEN his Majesty goes abroad, he is attended by all the Nobility of the Court, wearing their respective Badges; consisting of a Piece of Embroidery before and behind, on a Garment of black Silk, with a very broad Scarf, a great Body of Soldiers following in good Order. He is preceded by Men, both on Foot and Horseback, some carrying Colours and Banners, others playing on warlike Instruments. They are followed by the Life-Guards, composed of the principal Citizens. The King is in the Middle, carried under a very rich Gold-Canopy, and the Whole proceeds with such Silence, that not the least Noise is heard. When he passes by the great Men, or Soldiers, they must turn their Backs to him, without offering to look, or so much as cough, on such Occasions. Therefore most Soldiers put little Sticks in their Mouths, that they may not be accused of making a Noise. Just before him goes a Secretary of State, or some other great Officer, with a little Box: Into this he puts all the Petitions, and Memorials, which private Persons either present on the End of a Cane, or hang along the Walls, or Pales; so that they cannot see who prefers them. These, which are brought him by Men appointed to gather them, are laid before the King, on his Return to the Palace; and whatever he orders relating thereto, is forthwith put in Execution. All the Doors and Windows of the Houses in the Streets, through which his Majesty passes, are shut, and no-body dares presume to open them ever so little, much-less look over the Wall, or Pales^e.

THE King keeps abundance of Soldiers in his capital City, whose sole Business is to guard his Person, and attend him when he goes abroad. The Provinces are likewise obliged, once in

^a Hamel, p. 590, & seq.

^b The same, p. 594, & seq.

^c See before, p. 338. a.

^d Hamel, p. 588,

& seq. ^e The same, p. 595.

*Travels in
Korea.*

seven Years, to send all their Freemen, by a Turn, to guard him for two Months. Each Province has its General, with four or five Colonels under him, and each as many Captains depending on them; each of whom is Governor of some Town, or strong Hold; insomuch that there is not a Village, but where, at least, a Corporal commands, who has under him Tithing-Men, or Officers over ten Men. These Corporals are obliged, once a Year, to deliver to their Captains a List of what People are under their Jurisdiction.

And Forces.

THEIR Cavalry wear Cuirasses, Head-Pieces, Bows and Arrows, Swords and Whips, with small Iron Points. The Foot likewise wear a Corselet, a Head-Piece, a Sword, and Musket, or Half-Pike. The Officers carry nothing but Bows and Arrows. The Soldiers are obliged to provide fifty Charges of Powder and Ball, at their own Cost. Every Town, in its Turn, furnishes also a Number of religious Men, to guard and maintain, at their own Expence, the Forts and Castles, which are situate in narrow Passes, or on the Sides of Mountains. These are reckoned the best Soldiers, and obey Officers chosen out of their own Corps, who observe the same Discipline as the other Troops. Thus the King knows, to a Man, how many are fit to serve him. Those turned of sixty, are discharged from Duty, and their Children supply their Places. The Number of Freemen, who neither are, nor have been in the King's Service, together with the Slaves, makes above half the People in the Country.

Shipping.

KOREA^a being almost encompassed by the Sea, every Town is obliged to fit-out, and maintain a Ship. Their Ships have generally two Masts, and thirty, or thirty-two Oars; to each of which there are five or six Men: So that each of this Sort of Gallies has about three hundred Men, for Rowing and Fight. They carry some small Pieces of Cannon, and abundance of artificial Fireworks. Every Province has its Admiral, who views these Vessels once a Year, and gives an Account, of what he finds, to the High-Admiral, who sometimes is present at these Reviews. If any of the Admirals, or Officers under them, commits a Fault, he is punished with Banishment, or Death; as in the Year 1666, their Governor, who had the Command of seventeen Vessels, was punished for the Offence already mentioned^b.

The Revenue.

THE King's Revenue, for Maintenance of his House and Forces, arises out of the Duties paid for all Things the Country produces, or that are brought by Sea: To this Purpose, in all Towns and Villages there are Store-Houses to

keep the Tithe, which the Farmers, who are generally of the common Sort, take upon the Spot in Harvest-Time, before any Thing is carried away. Those who have Employments receive their Salaries out of the Revenues of the Places where they reside, what is raised in the Country being assigned to pay the Sea, and Land-Forces. Besides this Tithe, those Men, who are not listed in the Army, are to work three Days in a Year, at whatever Business the Country shall put them upon. Every Soldier, whether Horse, or Foot, has yearly three Pieces of Cloth, worth eighteen Shillings, given to cloath him; which is Part of the Pay of the Troops that are in the Capital. This is what is raised on the People, who know no other Duties, or Taxes.

JUSTICE is severely executed among the *Ko-rejians*. He who rebels against the King, is destroyed, with all his Race: His Houses are thrown-down, and no Man dares ever rebuild them; all his Goods forfeited, and sometimes given to some private Persons. Nothing can save the Man from Punishment, who makes any Objection to his Decree: This the *Dutch* were often Witnesses of. Among the rest, the Author remembers, that the King having desired his Brother's Wife, who was excellent at her Needle, to embroider him a Vest; that Princess bearing him a mortal Hatred, stitched-in, betwixt the Lining and the Outside, some Charms and Characters, of such a Nature, that his Majesty could enjoy no Pleasure, nor take any Rest, whilst he had it on.

At length suspecting the Matter, he had the Vest ripped, and found-out the Cause. Hereupon the King condemned her to be shut-up in a Room, the Floor whereof was of Brass, and ordered a great Fire to be lighted underneath, the Heat whereof tormented her till she died. The News of this Sentence soon spreading through the Provinces, a near Kinsman of the unhappy Lady, who was Governor of a Town, and in good Esteem at Court, ventured to write to the King; representing, that a Woman, who had been so highly honoured as to marry his Majesty's Brother, ought not to die so cruel a Death, and that more Favour should be shewn to the Sex. The King incensed at this Courtier's Boldness, sent for him immediately, and, after causing twenty Strokes to be given him on his Shin-Bones, ordered his Head to be cut-off.

THIS Crime, and those following, are only personal, and do not involve the whole Family. If a Woman kills her Husband, she is buried alive up to the Shoulders, in a Highway, and an Ax laid by her, with which all Passengers, who are not Noblemen, are obliged to give her a

1668.
Hamel.

^a In speaking of Korea, the Chinese to *Kau-li*, add *qua*; and the Manchews to *Solgon* (rather than *Sodbo*, as spelled p. 319.) annex *Kuron*, or *Koron*, which Words signify Kingdom, in the respective Languages. *Du Halde's China*, vol. 2. p. 246. ^b See before, p. 338. b.

Stroke

DESCRIPTION of KOREA.

347

*Travels in
Korea.*

Stroke on the Head till she is dead. The Judges of the Town, where this happens, are suspended for a-while: It is deprived of a Governor, and made subordinate to another Place; or, at best, only a private Gentleman is left to command in it. The same Penalty is inflicted on such Towns as mutiny against their Governor, or send false Complaints against them to Court.

*For Murder
and Theft,*

It is lawful for a Man to kill his Wife for Adultery, or any other heinous Fault, on proving the Fact. If the Woman so killed was a Slave, the Penalty is, to pay three Times her Value to the Owner. Slaves, who kill their Masters, are cruelly tormented to Death: But they reckon it no Crime for a Master to kill his Slave, though upon a slight Account. Thus they punish Murder. After they have long trampled on the Criminal, they pour Vinegar, (in which they washed the putrified Carcass) through a Funnel down his Throat, and when he is full, beat him on the Belly with Cudgels till he bursts. Thieves are trampled to Death: And though this be a dreadful Punishment, yet the *Koreans* are much addicted to stealing.

For Adultery,

If a single Man is found a-bed with a married Woman, he is stripped naked to a little Pair of Drawers; then daubing his Face with Lime, they run an Arrow through each Ear, and fasten a little Drum on his Back, which they beat at all the cross Streets, to expose him: This Punishment ends in forty or fifty Strokes of a Cudgel on the Man's bare Buttocks; but the Woman receives them with Drawers on. The Men are naturally very amorous, and so jealous, that they seldom allow their best Friends to see their Wives. If a married Man be taken lying with another Man's Wife, he is to suffer Death: This happens chiefly among Persons of Rank; and the Criminal's Father, if living, or else his nearest Relation, must be the Executioner. The Offender is to chuse his Death; but generally the Men desire to be run-through the Back, and the Women to have their Throat cut.

*Not paying
Debts,*

THEY, who by a Time appointed, do not pay what they owe to the King, or private Persons, are beaten twice or thrice a Month on the Shin-Bones, which is done till they can find Means to discharge the Debt: If they die before they have satisfied the Creditor, their nearest Relations

must pay it for them, or suffer the same Punishment; so that nobody ever loses what is due to him. The slightest Punishment in this Country is, to be bastonadoed on the Buttocks, or Calfs of the Legs; and they look upon it as no Disgrace, because it is very common, being often liable to it for only speaking one Word amiss. Inferior Governors, and subordinate Judges, cannot condemn any Man to Death, without acquainting the Governor of the Province; nor can any try Prisoners of State, without the King be first informed.

THE Manner how they bastonado on the Shin-Bones is this: They tie the Criminal's Feet together, on a little Bench four Fingers broad, and laying such another under his Hams, which are fast bound to it, they strike on the Shins with a Sort of Lath of Oak, or Alder, as long as a Man's Arm, somewhat round on one Side, and flat on the other, two Inches broad, and about the Thickness of a Crown-Piece. They must not give above thirty Strokes at one Time, and then two or three Hours after they repeat them, till the whole Number be compleat, according to the Sentence.

WHEN the Offender is to be drubbed on the Soles of the Feet, he is made to sit-down on the Ground, then having bound his Feet together by the great Toes, they rest them on a Piece of Wood they have betwixt their Legs, and beat them with a Cudgel as thick as a Man's Arm, and three or four Foot long, giving as many Strokes as the Judge has ordered. The Bastonado on the Buttocks is thus: The Men being stripped, they make them lie on the Ground with their Faces down, and bind them to the Bench. The Women have a Pair of wet Drawers left on, and in this Posture they beat them with a larger and longer Lath than those before-mentioned. An hundred Strokes are equivalent to Death, and many of them die, some even before they have received fifty.

WHEN they are adjudged to be beaten on the Calfs of the Legs, it is done with Rods, or Wands, as thick as a Man's Thumb. This Punishment is common to Women and Apprentices. Whilst these Severities are inflicting, the Criminals cry so lamentably, that the Spectators seem to suffer no less than the Offenders.

2 Hamel, p. 588, & seqq.

C H A P. III.

A DESCRIPTION of TARTARY, *subject to CHINA.*

INTRODUCTION.

Tartary in general: Vast Extent. Chinese Tartary. Inhabitants of Tartary. Travellers into the Mongols Country: Those into Eastern Tartary: Jesuits Map thereof. Names of Places. Du Halde's Account, whence.

Tartary in general.

TARTARY in general, commonly called *Great Tartary*, or rather *Tatary*, is a Country of vast Extent, bounded on the East by the *Tartarian*, or Eastern Ocean; and on the West by the *Caspian Sea*, the Rivers *Jaik* and *Tobol*, which separate it from *Russia*; and on the North it has *Siberia*, which belongs to *Russia*; and on the South the Kingdom of *Karasm*, the two *Bukharia's*, *China*, and *Korea*: So that it takes-up all the Middle-Part of *Asia*, from West to East; being situated between the seventy-fifth and hundred and sixty-first Degrees of Longitude, and between the thirty-seventh and fifty-fifth Degrees of Latitude. Hence it contains eighty-six Degrees of Longitude, or is in Length, from West to East, three thousand and six hundred Miles; and eighteen Degrees of Latitude, or is in Breadth, from South to North, nine hundred and sixty Miles, where broadest; though where narrowest, not above three hundred and thirty.

Vast Extent.

THIS Region, though so vastly extensive, is not near so large as it was while the *Tartar Empire* existed under *Jenghiz Khan*, and his Successors, who reduced the Whole, with all the Southern *Asia*, under their Dominion: But after it came to be broken to Pieces, by the Divisions among the Chiefs, or Heads, of Tribes, *Great Tartary* was curtailed, on every Side, by the bordering Powers, particularly the *Russians*; who on the West have subdued almost all that Part, containing the Empire of *Kapchak*, or *Kipjak*, which extended Westwards to the *Don*, and made near one Fourth of the Whole: And on the North have much enlarged the Bounds of *Siberia*, by incroaching on the Lands of the *Eluths*, or *Kalmuks*, and the *Kalkas* (particularly towards the Springs of the River *Irtish*) whom they have reduced to narrower Limits, from North to South, than formerly were possessed by them.

Chinese Tartary.

OF this great Country, more than one Half belongs to the Empire of *China*, extending Eastward from the famous Mountains of *Altay* (out

a of which the great River *Irtish* rises) in about one hundred and ten Degrees of Longitude. This Part is by some of the Missioners, who made the Map of it, called *Eastern Tartary*: But, according to most other Authors, the Name is given only to that Part which comprizes the Countries of the *Manchews*. Thus *Verbiest* intitles his first Progress, *A Journey into the Eastern Tartary*; and his second, *A Journey into the Western*; although this last did not extend beyond the Country of the *Mongols*, which lies, within this Division, to the West of the *Manchews*.

AND here it may be proper to observe, that *Inhabitants* the Whole of *Great Tartary* is possessed by two of *Tartary*: Sorts of People, branched-out into several Nations, or Tribes, and differing in their Language, Manners, and Customs. First, these known at present by the Name of *Manchews*, commonly called *Eastern Tartars*, and their Country, *Eastern Tartary*. Secondly, the *Mongols*, or *Moguls*, commonly called *Western Tartars*, and their Country, extending to the *Caspian Sea*, *Western Tartary*. Each of these People are divided into several Nations, and Tribes, especially the *Monguls*, who are infinitely the more numerous: For many Ages, they were known to us by the Name of *Turks*, and distinguished, by the Oriental Authors, into *Western* and *Eastern Turks*: Till in the thirteenth Century, led-forth by *Jenghiz Khan*, they made themselves famous, under the Appellation of *Moguls* and *Tartars*, which were the Names of the two principal Hords.

THE Country of the *Monguls* having been the *Travellers* Seat of their Empire for several Ages, became into greatly frequented, for a Time, by foreign Merchants and Travellers. Besides *Marco Polo*, the *Venetian*, who went thither for Sake of Trade, several Priests were sent out of *Europe*, by the Pope, on a religious Account, to the Successors of *Jenghiz Khan*; such as *Rubruquis*, *Carpin*, and others. The Journals of these Friars, which were published, give us a tolerable Account of the Country, and Inhabitants, at the Juncture they wrote: But that great Empire, in Time, falling *The Mon-* to Ruin, and the Country being, for the most *gols Country*, Part, one continued Desert, without Towns, or Habitations, it hath, of late Ages, been visited by

Introduction. by no Europeans, and the Russians have seldom passed through it, in their Way to China. All the Notices we have of it come from the Jesuits Verbiest, Thomas, and Gerbillon; the last of whom crossed it several Times: And from the Missioners Regis, Tartoux, Fridelli, and Bonjour, who made the Map in the Years 1709, 1710, and 1711. To these we must add the Notes of a curious Gentleman, to the History of Fênghiz Khân (written ^a by Abulghâzi Khân, King of Karazm) and translated by him from the German into French. These Remarks were collected by the Editor, whose Name was Bentink ^b, from the Report of several Persons, particularly Swedes, who had been in Tartary, or had their Memoirs from the Natives. He had inserted them occasionally, as Notes at the Bottom of their respective Pages: But the English Translator has thrown them together in a geographical Form, mixed with Remarks of his own, at the End of the History, to which it makes a second Volume.

Those into Eastern Tartary. THE early Travellers above-mentioned, not having penetrated into Eastern Tartary, which in their Time made no Figure in the World, give no Manner of Account of it, or the Inhabitants. The Jesuit Verbiest was the first European we know of, who entered into this Part of the Continent, when he accompanied the Emperor Kang-hi, in his Progress, in 1688. Since then the Russians, in their Way from Ni-po-chew, or Nerchinskoy, to China, passing through the Skirts of it, have furnished us with some farther Knowledge thereof. But the greatest Light is to be expected from the Missionary Geographers above-mentioned, who travelled through the Whole, and have transmitted Memoirs of their Remarks, as well as Maps, communicated by Du Halde, in his Description of China and Tartary.

Jesuits Map thereof. WITH REGARD to the Map of this Part of Tartary, we are told by them, that it is not only new, even in the Parts nearest to China, but the first that ever appeared either there, or in Europe: For, it seems, the Chinese Geographers have given no Description of these vast Territories (which they comprehend under the Names of Nyu-che and Ni-ul-Han) although inhabited by a Nation, who ruled in China itself about the thirteenth Century, under the Name of Kin-chau; but are, in a Manner, unknown at Pe-king, even to the Grandees, and the Literati. Such is their Contempt of Foreigners ^c.

HOWEVER, it may be necessary farther to inform the Reader, that the Country of the Kal-las, and other Lands, lying to the West of the

Introduction. Head of the River Tula, and North of the River Onon, were not measured by the Jesuits ^d; the Lake Paykal, or Baykal, River Irtysh, and the neighbouring Parts, were laid-down from the Reports of the Mongols ^e; neither was the rest surveyed any Thing so compleatly as China: For in Eastern Tartary they seem to have made but two Tours, and in Western Tartary only one; if we may judge by the Order in which Places are inserted in the Tables of Latitude and Longitude, which we have annexed: Nor are the Observations of the Latitude near so numerous as those made in China. As for the Longitudes, they are only computed as resulting from the geometrical Measures, they having made no Observations that Way in Tartary; whence it happens, that neither the Eastern Coast, nor Western Bounds at Mount Altay, are sufficiently fixed.

WITH respect to Names, the Missioners ^f thought necessary to insert those used in each Country. To the Manchew Places, they give the Manchew Names; and to the Mongul, the Mongul Names. When they first began the Map, the Emperor commanded the Tartarian Names to be written in the Tartarian, and the Chinese Names in the Chinese Characters; because it is impossible to write the Tartarian Names in the Chinese ^g. But as the Tartars have two Languages in common, the Manchew, and Mongul; therefore they have inserted only three Sorts of Names in their Map in European Characters: The Chinese Names, for the Towns they formerly possessed beyond the great Wall, in the Province of Lyau-tong, or Quan-tong, which, for the most Part, have undergone no Alteration: The Manchew Names, for all the ancient Places of the Manchew Country, which, like other Provinces of China, are subject to Governors sent thither by the Emperor: Thirdly, the Mongul Names, to distinguish the several Districts of the Mongul Princes; which, notwithstanding their vast Extent, have neither Cities, Fortresses, nor Bridges, and are in a Manner destitute of every Convenience of social Life ^h.

DU HALDE intitles his Account of these Countries, *Geographical Observations on Tartary: Extracted from the Memoirs of the Missioners who made the Map*. But as he has not distinguished the Remarks which belong to each Author, and it would be cumbersome to set-down all their Names at the Head of the Page, we shall only mention that of Regis, who seems to have been the chief Person concerned in the Survey.

^a In the Turkish Language.

^b He published a short Account in French also of Little Bukharia.

^c Du Halde's China, vol. 2. p. 236.

^d See the same, p. 249.

^e These we have, in some Measure, rectified from the Maps of Strahlenberg and Kyrillow, as well as other Helps.

^f Or the European Names. See before, p. 195.

^g Du Halde, as before, p. 236.

SECT. I.

The Territories of the Manchew Tartars, commonly called Eastern Tartary.

THIS Country is divided into three great Governments, *Shin-yang*, or *Mugden*, *Kirin Ula*, and *Tsitfikar*; whose Bounds and Extent appear from the Map.

1. *The Government of Shin-yang.*

Bounds and Extent. Shin-yang the Capital. Imperial Sepulchres. Inden City. Fong-whang-ching. San-cha River Point. Soil and Produce.

Bounds and Extent.

THE Government of *Shin-yang*, called by the *Manchews*, *Mugden*, contains all the ancient *Lyau-tong*^a, and is bounded on the South by the great Wall of *China*: On the East, North, and West, it is inclosed only by a wooden Palisado, seven or eight Foot high, and more fit to mark its Bounds, and keep-out petty Robbers, than to oppose an Army. The Gates are no better, and guarded only by a few Soldiers. The *Chinese* Geographers having given the Name of Wall to this Palisado, has occasioned the Province of *Lyau-tong* to be erroneously placed in some Maps^b, within the great Wall. As the Subjects of *Lyau-tong* were neither permitted to go-out of their own Country, nor into *China*, without Leave of the *Mandarins*, this Government was accounted very profitable: It contained likewise several fortified Places, but at present they are almost in Ruins, being become useless under the *Manchew* Emperors.

Shin-yang the Capital.

THE Capital of the Country is *Shin-yang*, or *Mugden*: A City, which the *Manchews* look-upon as the Metropolis of their particular Nation; and, therefore, since their Possession of *China*, have not only adorned it with several public Edifices, and stored it with Magazines, but have settled here the same Sovereign Tribunals with those at *Pe-king*, excepting that called *Li-pu*. These Tribunals consist of none but Natives, and all their Acts are written in the *Manchew* Language and Character. They are not only Sovereign in *Lyau-tong*, but likewise in all the Parts of *Tartary*, immediately subject to the Emperor. *Mugden* is likewise the Residence of a *Tartarian* General, who has here his Lieutenants-General, with a considerable Body of Soldiers of the same Nation. This has drawn a great Resort of *Chinese* from the other Provinces,

a who carry-on almost all the Trade of *Tartary*.

1720.

Regis.

NOT far from the Gates of this City are two magnificent Burying-Places of the first Princes of the reigning Family, who took the Title of Emperor from their beginning to reign in *Lyau-tong*. They are built according to the *Chinese* Architecture; but, what is singular, are inclosed by a thick Wall with Battlements, and are somewhat lower than that of the City. Several *Manchew* *Mandarins*, of all Ranks, are appointed to take-care of them, and, at set-Times, to perform the same Ceremonies of Respect, as if the Princes were still living.

Imperial Sepulchres.

THE Emperor *Kang-bi*'s Great Great Grand-father lies interred in an ordinary Burying-Place at *Inden*, which is more like a Village than a City, though the *Manchews* began here to establish the Seat of their Empire over *China*. The other Cities of this Province are of little Note, being thinly peopled, ill-built, and without any Defence, except a Mud-Wall; though some of them, as *I-chew*, and *King-chew*, are very well situated for Trade, and have Plenty of Cotton.

THE City of *Fong-whang-ching* is the best, and most populous, and has a very considerable Trade, being, as it were, the Key to the Kingdom of *Korea*, and its Commerce. This has drawn hither a great Number of *Chinese* Merchants, who have handsome Houses in the Suburbs. The principal Merchandize is Paper, made of Cotton, very strong and durable; but neither white, nor transparent: It is used at *Pe-king* for Sashes in Palaces, and Houses of Fashion. The City is governed by a *Manchew*, with the Title of *Hotongta*; who has under him several other *Mandarins*, Civil and Military, of his Nation. It derives its Name from *Fong-whang-shan*, the most noted Mountain in the Country, where the famous Bird, *Fong-whang*, is supposed to breed^c.

Fong-whang-ching.

THE *Chinese* exaggerate much in speaking of the Rarities of this Country; but the Missioners found nothing remarkable either in the Mountains, or Rivers: For Instance, the Point of *San-cha-bo*, so much taken Notice of by *Chinese* Authors, is no more than a Concourse of three ordinary Rivers, which unite in this Place, and under that common Name discharge themselves into the Sea; but is far from being a Novelty.

San-cha River Point.

THE Lands of this Province are in general very good, producing Plenty of Wheat, Millet, Roots, and Cotton: They also feed Numbers of Sheep and Oxen, which are rarely seen in any of the Provinces of *China*. They have but little Rice, yet Plenty of Apples, Pears, Nuts, Fil-

Soil and Produce.

^a Called also *Quan-tong*. This Government is about two hundred and seventy Miles long, and one hundred and twenty-five broad. ^b As in those of the Jesuit *Martini*, and after him *Sanfon*, *De Fer*, and all other Geographers, till *De l'Isle*. ^c See before.

berds,

Manchews
Country.

berds, and Chesnuts, even in their Forests. The a Eastern Part, which borders on the ancient Country of the *Manchews*, and the Kingdom of *Korea*, is full of Defarts and Bogs: Wherefore it is no Wonder, that one of the Emperors, of the Family of *Tang*, was obliged to raise a Causeway for twenty great *French* Leagues, in order to march his Army into *Korea*, and compel the King to render him Homage: For when it rains in these Parts, as it frequently does, the Water sinks so deep into the Ground, that the Sides of the Hills, by which People endeavour to pass, are almost as marshy as the Plains. In some Parts of this Country, are still to be seen the Ruins of Towns and Villages, destroyed in the Wars between the *Chinese* and *Koreans*.

2. The Government of Kirin-ula.

Its Bounds. Kirin-ula City. Pedne, or Petuna, Ninguta, or Ningunta. *Soil and Produce.* Grain. *The Air very cold. Flowers:* The Jin-seng, by whom gathered; and in what Manner: Where it grows: The Root. Honchun Village. *Prospect of Korea: Map of it, how far accurate: Wall of Korea. The Yu-pi Tartars: Their Dress: Way of Living: Use Dog-Sleds: Their Manners: Fish, and Fishing: Their Language. The Ke-cheng Tartars. Great Island on the Coast. Land of Yesso. Country beyond the River. Han-hala Tartars. Ruins of Cities, built by the Kin. River Songari. Mountain Chang-pe.*

Its Bounds.

THE second great Government is Kirin-ula-hotun, bounded Westward by the Palisado of *Lyau-tong*; on the East by the Eastern Ocean, Southward by the Kingdom of *Korea*, and on the North by the great River *Saghalian-ula* (whose Mouth is a little on this Side the fifty-third Degree:) So that it extends in Latitude no less than twelve Degrees, and almost twenty in Longitude (being seven hundred and fifty Miles long, and six hundred broad.)

Kirin-ula
City.

THIS Country is but thinly peopled, and has only three Cities, very ill-built, and encompassed with Mud-Walls. The chief of them is situated on the River *Songari*, there called *Kirin-ula*, whence it takes its Name; for *Kirin-ula-hotun* signifies the City of the River *Kirin*. Here resides the *Manchew* General, who has all the Privileges of a Vice-Roy, and commands the (civil) *Mandarins*, as well as the Troops.

Pedne, or
Petuna.

THE next City, called *Pedne*, or *Petuna*, stands on the same River, forty-five Leagues North-West from *Kirin-ula-hotun*: It is much inferior to the former, being inhabited mostly by *Tartarian* Soldiers, under a Lieutenant-General, and by Exiles.

THE third City, which the reigning Family considers as its ancient Patrimony, is situated on the *Hürka-pira*, which runs North into the *Songari-ula*: It is commonly called *Ninguta*, though its proper Name be *Ningunta*; for these two *Tartarian* Words, signifying seven Chiefs, are expressive of the Rise of their Kingdom, which was first established by the seven Brothers of the present Emperor *Kang-hi's* Great Grandfather's Father. That Prince having found Means to settle them, with all their Families, in this Place, soon made himself obeyed, through Fear, or Love, by the rest of his Nation; which was at that Time dispersed in the Defarts that extend to the Eastern Ocean, and divided into little Hamlets, each of one Family. The City, at present, is the Residence of a *Manchew* Lieutenant-General, who has Jurisdiction over all the Territories both of the old and new *Manchews*, called also *Han-hala Ta-tse*, and all the Villages of the *Yu-pi Ta-tse*, with some other Nations of less Note, along the Sea-Coasts towards the Mouth of the *Saghalian-ula*.

1720.
Regis.

Ninguta, or
Ningunta.

As the precious Plant, *Jin-seng*, grows only in these vast Countries, and as the *Yu-pi Tartars* are obliged to pay a Tribute of Sables, the Trade to *Ninguta* is considerable, and draws a great Number of *Chinese* from the most distant Provinces; whose Houses, with those of the Soldiers, make the Suburbs at least four Times larger than the City. The Emperor has taken Care likewise to re-people the Country, by sending hither such *Tartars* and *Chinese* Criminals as are banished: So that the Missioners found Villages at a good Distance from *Ninguta*. They make a Shift to live, and have, in particular, abundance of Millet, and a Sort of Grain unknown in *Europe*, called by the *Chinese* of the Country, *May-se-mi*, as being of a middle Kind, between Wheat and Rice. It is wholesome, and much used in these cold Countries: It would, perhaps, thrive in some Parts of *Europe*, where no other Grain will grow.

Soil and
Produce.

OATS, so scarce every-where else, are here in Plenty, and given to their Horses; which seemed strange to the *Tartarians* bred at *Pe-king*, where they feed their Horses with a Kind of black Beans, common to all the Northern Provinces. They have but little Wheat, or Rice; whether it be the Fault of the Soil, or that those new Inhabitants find their Account more in the Quantity, than Quality of their Grain. It is hard to assign Reasons, why so many Countries, which lie only in the forty-third, forty-fourth, and forty-fifth Degrees of Latitude, should differ so much from those of *Europe*, in regard of the Seasons, and Productions of Nature, as not to equal even the most Northern Provinces. How-

Manchews
Country.

ever, it may be presumed, that the Quality of any Soil depends rather on its abounding more, or less, in nitrous Particles, than on its Situation.

The Air very
cold.

THE Cold begins much sooner in these Parts, than at *Paris*, whose Latitude is near fifty Degrees. The Missioners felt it very sharp at the Beginning of *September*; and the eighth of that Month being at *Tondon*, the first Village of the *Ke-ching Tat-se*, or *Tartars*, were obliged to put-on Cloaths lined with Lamb-Skins: They were afraid too, that the *Saghalian-ula*, though so large and deep, would be frozen-over, and that the Ice would stop their Passage in Boats: That River was indeed frozen every Morning a considerable Distance from its Banks, and the Inhabitants assured them, that in a few Days it would be dangerous Sailing. This Cold is kept-up by the great Forests in this Country, which are very thick, and large, the nearer you advance to the Eastern Ocean: They were nine Days in passing through one, and had several Trees cut-down by the *Manchew* Soldiers, to make Room for their Observations of the Sun's Altitude.

Flowers.

HAVING passed these Woods, they came, from Time to Time, into fine green Valleys, watered with excellent Rivulets; whose Banks are enamelled with Variety of Flowers, but such as are very common in *Europe*, except the yellow Lilies, which are of a most lovely Colour: The *Manchews*, who accompanied them, were mighty fond of them. These Lilies, in Shape and Height, perfectly resemble our white Lilies, but are of a much weaker Scent; as well as the Roses found in these Valleys. The finest yellow Lilies grow seven or eight Leagues beyond the Palisado of *Lyau-tong*: They meet with great Quantities between the forty-first and forty-second Degree, in a most uncultivated Plain, bounded on one Side by a small River, and on the other by a Chain of little Hills.

The Jin-
feng.

BUT the Plant which is most esteemed, and draws a great Number of Herbalists into these Desarts, is the *Jin-feng*, called by the *Manchews*, *Orhota*, that is, *the Chief*, or *Queen of Plants*. It is highly valued for its Virtues, in curing several Diseases, and all Decays of Strength proceeding from excessive Labour of Body, or Mind: Wherefore, it has ever been the principal Riches of Eastern *Tartary*; for what is found in the North of *Korea*, is all consumed in that Kingdom. The Value of this Root heretofore, may be judged-of by the present Price it bears at *Pe-king*, where an Ounce sells for seven Times its Weight in Silver.

By whom
gathered.

THE *Chinese* used to get into the *Jin-feng*

Country among the Crouds of *Mandarins* and Soldiers continually passing and re-passing, between *Pe-king*, *Kirin-ula*, and *Ninguta*, or by Connivance of the Governors: But in 1709, the Emperor chusing that his *Manchews* should reap this Advantage, rather than the *Chinese*, ordered ten thousand of his Soldiers, encamped without the great Wall, to go and gather all the *Jin-feng* they could find, on Condition that each should give him two Ounces of the best, and take an equal Weight of fine Silver for the Remainder: By which Means the Emperor got, in that Year, twenty thousand *Chinese* Pounds of it, for less than a fourth Part of the Price it bears at *Pe-king*.

1720.
Regis.

As soon as these Herbalists begin their Search, they are obliged to quit their Horses and Baggage, carrying with them neither Tent, Bed, nor Provision, except a Bag of Millet dried in the Oven; and at Night lodge upon the Ground under a Tree, or in some wretched Hut run-up in Haste with Boughs. The Officers, who encamp at a Distance, where there is Plenty of Forage, receive an Account, from Time to Time, of their Progress, by those they send to them with Pieces of Beef, or Venison. Their greatest Danger is from wild Beasts, especially Tigers; and if any-one returns not on the Signal for moving their Quarters, they conclude him devoured by them.

THIS Plant grows only on the Declivity of woody Mountains, on the Banks of deep Rivers, or about steep Rocks: If a Forest takes Fire, it appears no more there in three or four Years; which proves, that the *Jin-feng* cannot endure Heat: But then, as it is not found beyond the forty-seventh Degree of Latitude, where the Cold is still more sensible, it may be inferred, that it can as little bear too cold a Soil. It is easily distinguished from all other Plants about it, and frequently by a Cluster of very round and red Fruit, or a Stalk that shoots above the Branches: Such was that the Missioners saw at the Village *Hon-chun*, on the Borders of *Korea*. This Plant, which was about a Foot and a half in Height, had but one Knob; whence shot four Branches, parting equally one from another, as if they did not spring from the same Plant: Each Branch had five Leaves, and, they say, there is always that Number, unless diminished by Accident.

THE Root is the only Part used in Physic, and has this Peculiar, that it shews the Number of its Years by the Remains of the Branches it has sent-forth: Its Age enhances its Value; for the largest and firmest are the best. This Plant, together with three others, was brought them by

The Root.

The Figure of it was taken by *Jartoux*, as it appears in our Print.

one

Manchews one of the Inhabitants of *Hon-chun*, who went in Quest of them five or six Leagues.

HON-CHUN, in forty-two Degrees fifty-five Minutes Latitude, two Leagues from *Korea*, is the principal Village of the *Quelka Tartars*, who are at present confounded with the *Manchews*, both in Language and Habitation; and is the farthest Extent of their Country, which is, in other Respects, agreeable enough, and, what is very uncommon among *Tartars*, well-cultivated, whether it be owing to Necessity, on Account of their Distance from the *Manchews* (the nearest of whom are forty Leagues off, and the Road very bad) or the Example of the *Koreans*, whose very Hills are cut into Stories, and cultivated to the Top.

It was a new Sight to the Missioners, after they had crossed so many Forests, and coasted so many frightful Mountains, to find themselves on the Banks of the River *Tumen-ula*, with nothing but Woods and wild Beasts on one Side, while the other presented to their View all that Art and Labour could produce, in the best-cultivated Kingdoms. They there saw walled Cities, and determined the Situation of four of them, which bounded *Korea* on the North: But as the *Koreans* understood neither their *Tartars*, nor *Chinese*, though they wear the Habit of the latter, the Jesuits could not learn the Names till they came to *Hon-chun*, where live the Interpreters, whom the *Tartars* employ in their Commerce with those People. The Names of these Towns are set in the Map, just as they are in the Emperor's, which has them in *Chinese*.

THE *Tumen-ula*, which divides the *Koreans* from the *Tartars*, falls into the Ocean ten Leagues from *Hon-chun*: As this was an important Point, the Missioners drew a Base of forty-three *Chinese Li*, to a high Hill near the Sea, whence they had a Prospect of two of the Cities fixed by their former Observations, and could also distinguish the Mouth of that River: So that their Map may be depended on for the exact Limits of *Korea* on the Side of *Tartary*: But as the Emperor did not approve of their entering that Kingdom, the Eastern and Inland Parts are laid-down from Observations made by Imperial Envoys sent the Year following, with a *Mandarin* of the Mathematic Tribunal, who took the Latitude of the Capital, called *Chau-fyen*, or *King-ki-tau*; as also from the Maps of the *Koreans*, which were communicated to the Missioners. Although for this Reason they cannot warrant the exact Position of the Eastern Cities, nor several of the Southern; yet they do not scruple to affirm, that their Map of it is incom-

parably more correct, than any published before; which were only made from uncertain Reports, or Translations of some *Chinese* Geographers, who never saw so much as the Frontiers of the Kingdom^a. The Name *Tumen-ula*, is a *Manchew* Appellation, and answers to the *Chinese Van-li-kyang*, that is, the River of ten thousand *Li*^b, which are equal to one thousand *French* Leagues: But the Map shews this to be false.

THE *Koreans* had built a strong Wall on the Bank opposite to the *Tartars*, almost like that of *China*; but the Part towards *Hon-chun* was quite ruined when the *Manchews* ravaged *Korea*, which they made their first Conquest: In Parts more remote, it continues almost entire. Beyond the *Tumen-ula*, the Missioners, in their Progress into the ancient Country of the *Manchews*, came to a River, called *Suifond-pira*, the most considerable in it, and very famous among these *Tartars*, though it scarce deserves Notice. Here they saw the Ruins of a City, called *Furdan-hotun*, situated in an open Plain fit for Tillage: It had only a slight Mud-Wall, defended by a shallow Ditch.

THE River *Ufuri* is incomparably the finest, both for Clearness, and Length of Course. It falls into the *Saghalian*, and belongs to the *Yu-pi Tartars*, who live in Villages by its Banks: It receives a great many large and small Rivers, inserted in the Map: It must be extraordinary full of Fish, since they serve the Inhabitants both for Food and Raiment: These *Tartars* know how to dress the Skins, and dye them of three or four Colours, to shape, and sew them in such a delicate Manner, that at first you would imagine they made-use of Silk, till on ripping a Stitch or two, you perceive an exceeding fine Thong cut-out of a very thin Hide.

THEY dress like the *Manchews*, in the *Chinese* Habit: The only remarkable Difference is, that the Bottom of their long Robes is commonly bound with a green, or red Border, on a white, or grey Ground: The Women also hang small Pieces of Brass Coin, or little Bells, at the Bottom of their Mantles, which give Notice of their Approach: Their Hair, which parts into several Tresses, falls-upon their Shoulders, and is loaded with Bits of Looking-Glass, Rings, and other Baubles, which they prize as Jewels^c.

THE Manner of Life of these *Yu-pi*, is no less extraordinary. All the Summer they spend in Fishing: One Part of what they catch is laid-up, to make Oil for their Lamps; another serves for their daily Food; and the rest, which they dry in the Sun, without salting (for they have no Salt) is laid-up for their Winter's Provision,

^a *Qu*, in the *Chinese*; and *Kuron* (or *Koron*) in *Manchew*, signify Kingdom. which ten make a *French* League.

^c *Du Halde*, as before, p. 245, & seq.

^b Or *Chinese* Furlongs, of

Manchews
Country.

whereof both Men and Beasts eat when the Rivers are frozen. The Missioners observed however, a great deal of Strength and Vigour in most of these poor People; yet the Animals used for Food, are very scarce in this Country, and their Flesh of such an intolerable Taste, that the very Servants, as eager as they are for Flesh, (having lived long on Fish) could not endure it. The Dogs in this Country draw their Sleds, when the Rivers are frozen, and are highly valued.

Use Dogs
Sleds.

IN their Return, they met the Lady of *Ussuri* coming from *Pe-king*; where her Husband, who had been chief General of this Nation, and enjoyed the Honours and Prerogative of a Body-Guard, was lately dead. She told them, that she had an hundred Dogs for her Sleds: One, beaten to the Road, goes before, which those in Harness follow, without straying, to the End of the Stage, and are relieved by others from the spare Pack. She assured them, that she had often run an hundred *Chinese Li* (or ten *French Leagues*) without resting. Instead of bringing them Tea, which is the Custom among the *Chinese*, and other *Tartars*, her Attendants served-up little Bits of Sturgeon, upon a neat Ratan Salver.

Their Man-
ners.

THIS Lady, who understood *Chinese*, had a quite different Air and Manner from these *Yu-pi Tartars*, who, in general, are of a peaceable Disposition, but heavy, unpolished, and without any Tincture of Learning, or the least public religious Worship, the *Chinese* Idols themselves, not having, as yet, found their Way among them: Very likely, says the good Jesuit, because the *Bonzas* cannot take-up with such a poor, wretched Country, where they sow neither Rice, nor Wheat, but only a little Tobacco, in a few Plats of Ground near each Village, on the Banks of the River: All the rest of their Land is covered with a thick, and almost impenetrable Wood; whence they are annoyed with a Cloud of Gnats, and such-like Insects; which they are obliged to drive-away with Smoke.

Fish, and
Fishing.

THERE are, in *Europe*, almost all the Kinds of Fish taken in these Rivers; but not that Quantity of Sturgeon, which is the principal Fishery of this Nation. If you will believe them, the Sturgeon is the King of Fish, and has no Equal. They eat certain Parts of it raw, pretending, by that Means, to partake of all the Virtues they attribute to it. Next to the Sturgeon, they highly prize a Fish, which is unknown to us, but one of the most delicious that can be eaten: It is about the Length, and almost of the Shape, of a small Tunny, but of a finer Colour: The Flesh is entirely red, which distinguishes it from other Fish: It is so very scarce,

a that the Missioners could never meet with it above once or twice. The Natives commonly spear the large Fish, and take the lesser with Nets: Their Barks are small, and their Boats made only of the Barks of Trees, so well sewed, as to keep-out Water.

1720.
Regis.

THE Language of the *Yu-pi* seems to be a Mixture of that of the *Manchews*, their Neighbours, on the West and South, and the *Ke-cheng Tartars*, bordering on the North and East; for to the Chiefs of the Villages, both Languages were intelligible. These Chiefs cannot be called *Mandarins*, as having neither their Power, Ensigns, nor Train: Neither did the Missioners ever hear any *Tartars*, or *Chinese*, give this Country the Name of a Kingdom, with which some *European* Geographers have honoured it.

THE same must be said of the Country of the *Ke-cheng Tartars*, notwithstanding it extends along the *Saghalian-ula*, from *Tonden* before-mentioned, to the Ocean: For in all this Space, of near one hundred and fifty Leagues, you meet with nothing but ordinary Villages, which are almost all seated on the Banks of that great River. Their Language differs from that of the *Manchews*, who call it *Fiatta*: This *Fiatta* Tongue is also apparently that of the *Tartars*, who inhabit from the Mouth of the *Saghalian-ula*, to the fifty-fifth Degree of Latitude, which, in this Part, is the Northern Boundary of the Emperor's Dominions in *East Tartary*. They do not shave their Heads, according to the present Custom of the Empire, but wear their Hair tied with a Sort of Ribbon, or in a Bag behind. They seemed more ingenious than the *Yu-pi Tartars*, answered distinctly to the Questions asked them by the Jesuits, concerning the Geography of their Country, and took great Notice of their Operations.

FROM these *Tartars* the Missioners learned, that opposite to the Mouth of the *Saghalian-ula*, there was a great Island inhabited by People like themselves. The Emperor, after this, sending some *Manchews* thither, they passed-over in Barks belonging to the *Ke-cheng Tartars*, who dwell by the Sea-Side, and trade with the Inhabitants of the Western Parts of the Island; and had they taken Surveys of the Southern Parts of it, as they did in their Progress on the East-Side, and, on their Return, by the North, to the Place whence they set-out, the Missioners should have procured a compleat Knowledge of this Island: But being obliged to return too soon, for Want of Provisions, they did not bring them the Names of any Villages, but those through which they passed, nor a Plan of the Southern Coast. The Draught of that Part, therefore, is only grounded on the Reports of the Inhabitants; and, on this Circumstance, that no Land appeared

Manchews
Country.

On the Coast.

Land of
Yesso.

Country be-
yond the Ri-
ver.

peared along that Coast beyond the fifty-first Degree of Latitude; which could not be, were the Island longer.

THE Inhabitants of the Continent give it various Names, according to its different Villages; but their general Name is, *Saghalian Anga bata*, or, *The Island of the Mouth of the black River*: That of *Hu-yé*, fancied by some at *Pe-king*, is entirely unknown, both to the *Tartars*, and the Natives. The *Manchew* Surveyors told the Missioners, that these Islanders bred neither Horses, nor any other Beasts of Burden; but that in several Parts they had seen a Sort of tame Stags, which drew their Sleds, and, by the Description, were like those used in *Norway*.

THEY heard nothing of the Land of ^a *Jesso*, which must be five or six Degrees more to the South, according to the *French* Maps, and the *Portuguese* Map of *Japan*, from whence that Island cannot be far distant, being situate, probably, not beyond the forty-fifth Degree of Latitude ^b. This seems to be the Country called *Ye-tse*, by the *Chinese* Geographers, who make it Part of *Eastern Tartary*, and a Land of vast Extent ^c, inhabited by a warlike Nation, formidable to the *Japanese*; having hairy Bodies, Whiskers hanging-down to their Breasts, and their Swords tied by the Points behind their Heads. But all this is void of Truth, for neither the *Yu-pi*, nor *Ke-cheng Tartars*, whose Lands are contiguous, and who, in the Time of their hunting Sables, range all the Countries East and West, as far as the fifty-fifth Degree, know any Thing of these terrible People: Therefore, it is much safer to rely on the Accounts from *Japan*, concerning this Island of *Jesso*, which cannot be far from thence, as being the Place to which several *Japanese* Christians fled, conducted by the Jesuit *Jerom des Anges*, who, in 1623, was put to Death at *Yendo*, with fifty of his Followers.

BEYOND the *Saghalian-ula*, there is nothing but a few Villages, inhabited by the *Ke-cheng Tartars*; the rest of the Country being a wild Desert, frequented only by Sable-Hunters: It is crossed by a famous Chain of Mountains, called *Hinkan-alin*. Here are also some pretty good Rivers. The *Tuburá-pira*, which falls into the Eastern Ocean, springs from another Chain of

a Mountains, in the fifty-fifth Degree of Latitude, which marks the Point whence the Rivers flow contrary Ways: Thus the *Udi-pira* runs towards the Northern Sea, and belongs to the *Russians*; while the *Silimfi-pira* passes Southward into the Country of the *Ke-cheng Tartars*.

THOSE called *Han-bala*, or the three *Hala* Families, are true *Manchews*, who united together after the Conquest of the rest of their Nation, from which they lay at a great Distance, being mixed with the *Yu-pi Tartars*. The Emperor *Kang-hi* gave them Lands near *Ningúta*, along the *Hárba-pira*, and the *Songari-ula*, on the Banks of which almost all their Villages are seated. Their Wives, Children, and Servants, go clothed in general, like the *Yu-pi*; but have Horses and Oxen, as well as good Harvests, which the others want.

IN these Parts also, are seen the Ruins of several Cities. *Fenegbé-botun* stood on the *Hárba-pira*, five or six Leagues from *Ningúta*; but now is only a little Hamlet. *Odoli-botun* was strongly situated, being accessible only through the Waters, by a narrow Causeway. Here are also found great Stone Stair-Cases, with some other Remains of a Palace, the like not to be met-with any-where else; not even at *Ningúta*: So that it is very probable, all the Monuments of Antiquity in *Eastern Tartary*, were not the Work of the present *Manchews*, but of those of the twelfth Century, who under the Name of *Kinchau* ^d, were Masters of the North of *China*; and having built, in several Parts of their Country, Towns and Palaces, were afterwards cut-off by the *Mongols*, in Confederacy with the *Chinese*, in such a Manner, that those who escaped the Slaughter, were obliged to fly into the Western Parts of their ancient Country, now inhabited by the *Solm Tartars*, who say they were originally *Manchews*.

c HENCE it may likewise be concluded, that *Pútay-ula-botun* ^e was built by them; though nothing now remains, except an ordinary Pyramid, and the Ruins of the Walls, without which are the Houses inhabited by the *Manchews*: It is about eight or nine Leagues from *Kirin-ula-botun*, on the *Songari*, there called *Pútay-ula*, whence it takes its Name: This is the least of the four Cities in the Government of *Kirin-ula*,

^a This is written variously, *Jesso*, *Jeso*, *Jitso*, *Jedso*, *Yedso*, and *Ytso*. ^b The Land of *Yeso*, as represented in our Maps, according to the Discoveries of the *Dutch*, extends beyond the fiftieth Degree of Latitude, and, consequently, the North Part of it must lie in nearly the same Parallel with the South-Coast of the Island mentioned in the Text, and, perhaps, three or four Degrees more to the East, as it is exhibited in Mr. *Kyri-low's* Map of the *Russian* Dominions, published at *Petersburg* in 1734; which seems to be the best extant for those Parts. This Country, there called *Jedso*, is represented as an Island; but Mr. *D'Anville* has made two Islands of it; and *Strahlenberg* makes *Jedso* a Part of *Kamchatka*, contrary to the Fact. ^c Placing it about *Hon-chun*, above-mentioned, on the Northernmost Borders of *Korea*. ^d These were the *Kin Tartars*, often mentioned before. ^e The same which *Verbiest*, in his Journal inserted hereafter, calls simply *Ula*, representing it as once the Seat of the *Tartar* Empire.

Manchews
Country.

River Son-
gari.

Mountain
Chang-pe.

but by far the most agreeable, as being in a more a fertile, and better-cultivated Plain.

THERE is nothing more celebrated in the *Manchew* History, than the *Songari-ûla*, and the Mountain whence it springs, called by the *Tartars*, *Shanyen-alin*; and by the *Chinese*, *Chang-pe-shan*, that is, the ever-white Mountain, from whence they derive their Origin, which they mix with a great many fabulous and wonderful Circumstances. The Truth is, that the *Manchews* had then no River, in all their Territories, comparable to the *Songari-ûla*, which abounds with Fish, is large, deep, and navigable in every Part, without Danger; being but moderately rapid, even at its Confluence with the *Saghalian-ûla*.

As for the Mountain, it is the highest in all *Eastern Tartary*, and may be seen at a vast Distance, one Half woody, the other sandy: It is this which makes it appear always white, and not the Snow, as the *Chinese* imagine; for it scarce ever has any. On the Top are five Rocks, like so many broken Pyramids, exceeding high, which are continually wet with Fogs, and Vapours, peculiar to this Country. Between them is a very deep Lake, whence, with a fine Stream, the *Songari* takes its Rise. But it does not give Birth, as the *Manchews* pretend, to the three great Rivers, *Tûmen-ûla*, (already described) *Ya-lû-ûla*, and *Si-hû-ûla*; which having encompassed the Borders of *Korea*, unite, and fall into the Sea of that Kingdom.

3. The Government of *Tsitfikar*.

Tsitfikar City. The *Taguri*. *Merghen City*. *Saghalian-ûla City*. *Aykom City Ruins*: Its Rise, and Fall. *Pearl-Fishing*. *Solon Tartars*. *Sable-Hunters*. *River Ergona*, or *Argon*. *Nipchu*, or *Nerchinskoy*. *Manchews Country*: Extent, and Cities. *Solon*, or *Dawra Province*. *Albazin*, or *Yak-sa*. The *Fiatta*, or *Yu-pi*. *Vast Desert Country*. The *Orochon Tartars*. *Manchews*, their Religion, Persons, Language.

Tsitfikar
City.

THE third Government is that of *Tsitfikar*^b, a new City, built by the Emperor *Kang-hi*, to secure his Frontiers against the *Russians*: It is situated near the *Nenni-ûla*, a considerable River, that falls into the *Songari*, and inclosed with a strong Palisado, not very high, but lined with a pretty good Rampart. The Garrison consists chiefly of *Tartars*, but the Inhabitants are mostly *Chinese*, drawn thither by Traffic, or banished for Crimes. The Houses of both are without the wooden Wall, which incloses little besides the Courts of Justice, and Palace of the

Tartar General: They are built of Earth, ranged into pretty wide Streets, and inclosed with a Mud-Wall. It is inhabited by *Manchews*, *Solons*, and chiefly by the ancient Inhabitants of the Country of *Tsitfikar*, called *Taguri*^c. This Nation, which is not very numerous, submitted to the *Manchews*, under the Father of the Emperor *Kang-hi*, imploring his Protection against the *Russians*; who, passing in armed Barks out of the *Saghalian-ûla* into the *Songari-ûla*, secured all the Rivers communicating with them, and became terrible to the *Tartarian* Nations on their Banks. The *Taguri*, who are large and robust, were always used to sow Grain, and to build Houses, though surrounded with *Tartars*, who never did either.

THE Governor of *Tsitfikar*, has Jurisdiction *Merghen* over the new Cities, *Merghen*^d *hotun*, and *Sag-City*. *Saghalian-ûla-hotun*. *Merghen* is above forty Leagues from *Tsitfikar*, much thinner of People, and inclosed with a single Wall. The Lands, belonging to the two last Cities, are but indifferent, being a sandy Soil: But those of *Saghalian-ûla-hotun*, that is, the City of the Black River, yield good Crops of Wheat, being a Plain, extending along the fine River *Saghalian*, and containing several Villages.

THE City *Saghalian-ûla* itself, which stands *Saghalian-* on the South Side, is built like *Tsitfikar*, is *ûla City*. equally populous, and richer in Commodities. To this City belong the *Manchew* Villages ^d on that River, which are but few, and several large Forests, where is excellent Hunting for Sables. These the *Russians* would have made themselves Masters of, had not their City *Yaksa*, which was built a few Days Journey higher-up the River, been demolished by the Treaty in 1689. The *Tartar* Hunters still keep a very good Guard on the Frontiers, and armed Barks on the *Saghalian-ûla*.

ABOUT thirteen *Chinese* *Li*^e higher, on the *Aykom City* North Side, are the Ruins of an ancient City, ^{Ruins.} called *Aykom*, built by the first Emperors of the preceding Family, *Tay-ming*: For, by a surprising Turn of Fortune, the Western *Tartars*, or *Monguls*, were not only expelled by the *Chinese*, whose Masters they had been for many Years; but also attacked with such Vigour in their own Country, that after retiring a long Way, they were obliged, in their Turn, to draw Lines, of which the Missioners saw some Ruins. Soon after, finding themselves no longer able to withstand their enraged Enemies, they passed the *Saghalian-ûla*, and, to keep them beyond the River, was *Aykom* built under *Yong-lo*.

^a Du Halde, p. 247, & seq.

^b By *Ides*, *Xixigar*; by *Brand*, *Suttega*; and in the Jesuits Table of Latitude and Longitude, *Chiskar*. This Government is seven hundred and forty Miles long, and six hundred broad.

^c Called by *Isbrand Ides*, *Targazi*.

^d Or *Merghin*

^e Ten *Li*, or Furlongs, make a League.

1720.
Regis.

The *Taguri*.

Calmuck Tartars *from* Ilbrant Ides.



J. Basire sculp

Vol. 4. Pl. 48. p. 356.

Tartars, from Isbr. Ides.



J. Baire sculp.

Pl. I. N^o. 4. p. 35^b.

Eastern
Tartary.
Its Rise and
Fall.

It appears to have subsisted no long Time, since a twenty Years, after the *Tartars* rallied, and entering their ancient Country, destroyed it. Then to revenge themselves on the *Chinese*, ravaged their Northern Provinces; and though they were afterwards overwhelmed, by the vast Army of the Emperor *Suen-ti*, yet they still keep Possession of their old Territories, the *Chinese* Generals not knowing how, or being unwilling, to improve the Victory by driving them beyond the *Saghalian-ûla*, and re-building *Aykom*. This Name is known to the *Chinese*, as well as *Tartars*; and several at *Pe-king* give it to *Saghalian-ûla-hotun*, above-mentioned, a new City, built in a different Place.

Pearl-Fish-
ing.

INTO the River *Saghalian* ^a run the *Son-pira*, *Korfin-pira*, and several others considerable for Pearl-Fishing; which is done without much Art, the Fishermen only jumping into these little Rivers, and taking the first Oysters they can find. They say there are no Pearls in the *Saghalian* itself, because, it is likely (as their *Mandarins* informed the Missioners) they durst not plunge into so deep a Water. They fish for them likewise in several other little Rivers, that fall into the *Nonni-ûla*, and *Songari*, as the *Arom*, and *Nemer*, in the Road from *Tsitfikar* to *Merghen*; but affirmed they never found any in those West of *Saghalian-ûla-hotun*, towards the *Russian* Territories. The Pearls are much cried-up by the *Tartars*, but would probably be little valued by *Europeans*, on Account of their Defects in Shape and Colour. The Emperor has several Chaplets with one hundred, or more, on each, very large, and exactly like: But then they are chosen out of Thousands, all belonging to him. The Sable-Skins of this Country are also highly valued by the *Tartars*, because they wear well, and are lasting.

Solon Tar-
tars.

THE *Solon Tartars*, who hunt the Sables, are originally *Eastern Tartars*, descended, as themselves say, from those who escaped the general Destruction of their Nation in 1204, before-mentioned. They are more robust, skilful, and brave, than the other Inhabitants of these Parts; and their Women ride on Horseback, draw the Plow, hunt Stags, and other Game. A great Number of these *Tartars* now reside at *Nierghi*, a pretty large Town, not far from *Tsitfikar*, and *Merghen*. The Missioners saw them set-out from thence, *October* the first, to hunt Sables, clad in short strait Jackets of Wolf-Skins, with a Cap of the same, and their Bows at their

Backs. They took with them some Horses loaded with Millet, and their long Cloaks of Fox or Tiger Skins, against the Cold, especially of the Night. Their Dogs are made for the Game, clamber well, and are acquainted with the Wiles of the Sables. Neither the Severity of the Winter, which freezes the largest Rivers, nor the Tigers, which often worry them, can hinder their returning to this painful and dangerous Exercise, because all their Riches consist in it. The finest Skins are reserved for the Emperor, who pays a fixed Price for a Number: The rest bear a great Rate, even in the Country itself, being pretty scarce, and are immediately bought-up by the *Mandarins* in those Quarters, and the Merchants of *Tsitfikar*.

THE Bounds of this Government to the West, and on the Side of *Russian Tartary*, are two Rivers of a moderate Largeness; one called *Ergona* ^b, rises to the South, a little below the fiftieth Degree of Latitude, and joins the *Saghalian-ûla*, in four Degrees of East Longitude from *Pe-king*. The other River, named *Aighe Kerbecchi*, descends with a shorter Course from the North, and falls into the *Saghalian*, a little North-West of the Mouth of the *Ergona*.

FROM hence they reckon it fifty Leagues to *Nipchû* ^c, the first City of the *Russians*, almost under the Meridian of *Pe-king*: It stands on the North Side of the *Saghalian-ûla*, and takes its Name from the River *Nipchû*, which there falls into the former: It is built, by Report, much like *Tsitfikar*. The Garrison mostly consists of *Siberians* and *Tartars*, commanded by *Russian* Officers. Its Latitude was found in 1689, by the Jesuits *Thomas* and *Gerbillon*, to be fifty-one Degrees forty-five Minutes; which agrees very well with the Observations made by the surveying Missioners at *Saghalian-ûla-hotun*, and thirty-one Leagues higher-up the River, where the *Tartars*, called *Uliissû-mûdan*, are seated. The *Russian* Dominions beyond *Nipchû*, and that Part of the *Saghalian-ûla* towards its Source, were laid-down in their Map solely from Reports of the bordering *Mongul*, and other *Tartars* ^d.

To this Account of *Eastern Tartary*, and its Inhabitants, by *Regis*, let us add what the Jesuit *Gerbillon* hath written of them.

THE Country of the *Manchews*, says this Author, lies North of *Lyau-tong*, the most Eastern Province of *China*; extending from forty-one to fifty-three Degrees of North Latitude, and from about one hundred and four of Longitude ^e, to

^a This River has several Names in different Parts, as *Onon* towards the Source; afterwards *Shilka*: By the *Chinese*, *He-long-kyang*, or *Black Dragon River*; and by the *Russians*, *Amûr*. ^b Or *Argun*, as written by others. ^c Or *Ni-po-cheu*, called by the *Russians*, *Nerchinskoy*, from the River *Nerchin*, on which it is situate.

^d *Du Halde's China*, p. 248, & seq. ^e It should be rather one hundred and fourteen, reckoning from *Paris*, or one hundred and thirty-four, from *Ferro*.

Eastern
Tartary.

the Eastern Ocean, which bounds it that Way. a yond which lives a Nation, who use only Dogs 1699. to draw their Carriages, and are called by the Gerbillon. *Manchews*, their Neighbours, by no other Name than *Dog-Drivers*^a. This People, though extended along the River about two hundred Leagues, are not numerous, having only here and there small Hamlets, situate at the Fall of some little River into the *Saghalian*.

Extent, and
Cities.

It is of great Extent from East to West, but thinly peopled, especially since the Emperor drew Part of its Inhabitants to *Pe-king*; though it has some Cities, and walled Towns, besides Villages, and Hamlets, whose People are employed in Agriculture. The principal Cities, are *Ula*, *Aikom*, and *Ninguta*, garisoned Places, with Governors, and other civil and military Officers: Hither also Criminals are banished, to re-people the Country. The Air is very sharp, and the Land mountainous and woody, much like *Kanada* in *America*. The Natives live in Huts, on the Banks of Rivers, and subsist by Hunting and Fishing, especially the more Eastern Inhabitants, who are somewhat rude and barbarous.

Solon, or
Dawra Province.

THE Country is divided into Provinces; the most Western is *Solon*, by the *Russians* called *Dawra*, which is rather the Name of a Nation, than a Country. It begins at the Confluence of the *Ergona*, and *Saghalian-ula*, along which latter it extends above one hundred and fifty Leagues towards *Ninguta*. The Governor told *Gerbillon*, there were not above ten thousand Families in the Province. They are great Hunters, dextrous Archers, and pay their Tribute in Sable Skins; each Family two, three, or more a Year, according to the Number of able Persons.

Albazin, or
Yak-sa.

IN the whole Country, there is but one Town, called *Merghen*, or *Merghin*, built and garisoned by the Emperor; every-where else, are nothing but Huts. The *Russians*, indeed, had a Fortrefs here, which they called *Albazin*, and the *Tartars*, *Yaksa*, from a little River on which it stood, where it runs into the *Saghalian-ula*. This Fortrefs occasioned the War between the Emperor, and the *Russians*, the Garison disturbing the *Chinese* Sable-Hunters; but at length the Fort was demolished, and the Country yielded to the Emperor by the Treaty of *Nipchú*.

FROM *Yaksa*, to the Mouth of the *Saghalian-ula*, in the Eastern Sea, are full four hundred Leagues, as the Vice-Roy, who made the Voyage in a Bark, by the Emperor's Order, assured the Author. They reckon one hundred and fifty Leagues from *Yaksa* to *Ninguta*; be-

FROM hence along the River to the Sea, lies *The Fiatta*, a Nation called *Fiattú*, or *Fiatta*^b, of a quite ^{or Yu pi.} different Language from the former, as they both differ from the *Manchews*. The People, as described, are Savages, much like the *Iroquois* in *America*. They live on Fish, and cloath themselves with their Skins, whence by the *Chinese* they are called *Yu-pi*, that is, *Fish Skin*. They understand not Agriculture, living in Huts, without King, or Sovereign, though every Community chuse a Chief, whom they obey, muck-like the Savages of *Kanada*. They have Canoas made of the Bark of Trees, or the Trunks hollowed. Those near the Sea are frequently visited by Boats from the Islands, that lie pretty thick at the Entrance of the River; which is not there above three Leagues broad, but very deep every-where, and navigable, when not frozen, for Vessels of good Burden up to *Nipchú*, about five hundred Leagues distant.

GERBILLON learned from the Vice-Roy, ^{East Desert} that all the Region, East of the River, called by ^{Country.} the *Tartars*, *Songari*, and the *Russians*, *Singala*,

is nothing but a vast Desert full of Mountains and Forests^c. The Inhabitants along the *Songari* are *Manchews*, called by the *Russians*, *Dú-chari*^d. In Winter they go a Sable-hunting in these great Forests, and return to spend the Summer at home about *Ninguta*.

NORTH of the *Saghalian-ula*, about one hundred Leagues below *Yaksa*, runs a River, called *Chikiri*, by the *Manchews*, and *Zia*, by the *Russians*, about half a League over near its Fall into the *Saghalian-ula*. The Ascent to its Source, they say, is two Months Journey; but you may return in fifteen Days. It rises in a Chain of Mountains, which serves for a Boundary to the two Empires, and descends Southward with a very rapid Current.

THE *Manchews* call the People about this ^{The Oro-} River *Orochon*, from a Creature called *Oron*, ^{achon Tar-} a small Sort of Deer, which they break to draw ^{tars.} their Sleds, or carry their Baggage. The Author had seen some in the Emperor's Park; also

^a These, by their Situation, must be the *Ke-cheng Tartars*. ^b *Fiatta* is said before, p. 354. c. to be the Language of the *Ke-cheng Tartars*. Perhaps it is the indigenous Name of one of these two Nations, and thence called the *Fiatta* Tongue. ^c The Missionaries, who were on the Spot, and made the Map, say both the *Yu-pi*, and *Ke-cheng Tartars*, inhabit to the East of the *Songari*, the latter dwelling along the *Saghalian-ula*, as far as its Mouth. ^d *Arrêt*. p. 146. says, this Province of *Bogdoi*, is called by the *Russians*, *Diuchari*; and, by the *Monguls*, *Diurfsi*.

Eastern Tartars, from Nieuhof.



Eastern
Tartary.

Elks, which are common in this Country, and that of *Solon*. The fine Sables, grey Ermine, and black Foxes, are found among the *Chikiri*. The *Russians* took abundance of fine Skins, while they held *Takfa*.

Manchews,
their Reli-
gion.

As for the *Manchews* themselves, who are Lords of all the rest, and their Chief the Emperor of *China*, they are called by the *Russians*, *Bogdoy*^a. They may pass for Heathens, though they have neither Temples, nor Idols, nor regular Worship, but what is offered in Sacrifice to the Emperor of Heaven, as they express it^b. They pay, indeed, their Ancestors a Veneration, mixed with Superstition; and some of them, since their being in *China*, have embraced the idolatrous Sects: But they are mostly wedded to their old Religion, which they reverence as the Basis of their Empire, and the Source of their Prosperity^c.

Persons,

ACCORDING to *Bentink*, the *Eastern Tartars*, (or *Manchews*) whom he calls the *Mungals of the East*, live mostly by Husbandry, and resemble, in all Things, the *Mungals of the West*; excepting that they are more civilized, and fairer, especially the Female Sex, among whom there are many to be found who might pass for fine Women in any Country. Most of them have fixed Habitations; they have also Towns and Villages. As for their Religion, they follow neither that of *Bo*, nor the *Chinese*; but what little they have, seems to be a Mixture of both, which is in a Manner reduced to some nocturnal Ceremonies favouring more of Witchcraft, than Religion^d. Their Language is a Mixture of the *Chinese*, and ancient *Mogul*, which has scarce any Manner of Connexion with that of the *Moguls of the West*^e.

Language.

4. Remarks on the Language of the Manchew Tartars.

Care to preserve it: How preserved. Manchew Dictionary, how compiled: Variety of Terms, and Copiousness: Words to express Things, and their Qualities: Their Characters, and Kinds of Writing: Pencils, and Pens. European Languages censured: Vindicated by *Parennin*. Defects found in the Tartarian: Few Words borrowed from other Languages.

Care to pre-
serve it,

UNDER the present Tartar Government, the Manchew Language is as much used at Court, as the *Chinese*; and all public Acts, issued either from the Sovereign's Court of Jus-

tice, or from the Emperor's supreme Council, 1720. are drawn-up in both Languages: Yet it began to decline, and would probably be lost, did not the Tartars use all Precautions to preserve it. Under the first Emperor *Shun-chi*, they began to translate the *Chinese* Classics, and compile Dictionaries in Alphabetical Order; but the Explanations and Characters being in *Chinese*, which Language could neither in Sense, nor Sound, express the *Tartarian*, the Work was of little Use. For this Reason, the Emperor *Kang-hi*, at the Beginning of his Reign, erected an Office of the best Grammarians in both Languages at *Pe-king*, some of whom were set to translate the Histories and Classics left unfinished; others to turn Pieces of Oratory; but more in compiling a *Thesaurus*.

How pre-
served.

THIS Task was performed with extraordinary Diligence. When a Doubt arose, they interrogated the old Men of the eight Tartar Banners: If unsatisfied, they consulted those who were just come from the utmost Parts of their Country. A Reward was proposed to the Discoverer of any old Word, or Phrase, proper for their *Thesaurus*, and Care was taken to insill it into those who had forgotten, or rather never learnt it. Having collected all the Words, so that few seemed left for a Supplement, they ranged them in Classes.

Manchew
Dictionary.

THE first treats of the Heavens; the second, of Time; the third, of the Earth; the fourth, of the Emperor, the Government of the *Mandarins*, Ceremonies, Customs, Music, Books, War, Hunting, Man, Soil, Silk, Cloth, Habits, Instruments, Labour, Workmen, Barks, Eating and Drinking, Grain, Herbs, Birds, Animals wild and tame, Fishes, Worms, &c. Each Class is divided into Chapters and Articles; and every Word thus ranged and written in large Characters, has under it, in small ones, its Definition, Explication, and Use. The Explanations are neat, elegant, and in an easy Style; and, by imitating them, you learn to write well. But as this Book is in the *Tartarian* Language, and Character, it is of Use only to those, who understanding the Tongue before, are willing to perfect themselves, or translate Authors into it.

How com-
piled.

WHAT is singular in this Language, compared with the *French*, is, that the Verb differs as often as the Substantive governed by it. For Example, in the Verb *make*, they change it as often as the Substantive that follows it. The *French* say, *make a Verse, make a Picture, make a Statue*, &c. which is a commodious Way, but what the *Tartars* cannot endure. If the same Verb escapes

Variety of
Terms.

^a And the Emperor *Bogdoy Khân*, and *Amolon Bogdoy Khân*.

the established Religion of *China*.
must needs have been misinformed.

^c *Du Halde's China*, vol. 2. p. 255, & seq.

^e See History of the *Turks, Mogols*, &c. vol. 2. p. 503, & seq.

^b Their Religion is nearly the same with

^d In this the Author

Eastern
Tartary.

them in familiar Discourse, it is pardonable; but in an Author, or even in their ordinary Writings, inexcusable. The Repetition of the same Word, within two Lines, is equally insupportable, as making a Monotony, which is grating to their Ears. They fall a laughing, when they hear the Missioners read Books, at the frequent Returns of *que, qu'ils, qu'eux*^a; who, what, him, them, &c. The close Repetition of those Pronouns quite disgusts them, and it is in vain to tell them it is the Genius of the *French* Language. Indeed the *Tartars* can very well be without these Helps, for the bare ranging of their Words answers the same End, without Obscurity, or Ambiguity; nor have they any insipid Puns, or Quibblings on Words.

And Copious-
ness.

ANOTHER Singularity in their Language is, the Copiousness of it, which enables them to express clearly, in a few short Words, what without their Help would require a great many. For Instance, though a Dog, of all domestic Animals, affords the fewest Terms in their Language; yet, besides the common Appellations of great and little Dog, Mastiff, Greyhound, Spaniel, &c. they have Words to express their Age, Hair, and good or bad Qualities. Would they signify, that a Dog has the Hair of his Ears

Words to ex-
press Things,

and Tail very long and thick, the Word *Tayha* is enough. Has he a long thick Muzzle, his Tail the same, large Ears, and hanging Lips, the single Word *Yolo* expresses all that. If this Dog couples with an ordinary Bitch, the Whelp is named *Peseri*. Any Dog, or Bitch, that has two flaxen, or yellow Locks, above the Eyebrows, is called *Túrbe*: If spotted like a Leopard, *Kúri*: If speckled about the Muzzle, and the rest of one Colour, he is called *Palta*: If his Neck be all white, he is *Chakú*: If he has some Hairs on the Top of his Head that fall back, *Kalia* denotes him: If the Ball of his Eye be half white, half blue, he is signified by *Chikeri*: If he be low, short-legged, squat, and long-necked, he is *Kapari*. The common Name of a Dog is *Indagon*; of a Bitch, *Niegken*: Whelps, under seven Months, are called *Niacha*: Afterwards, till eleven, *Núkre*: At sixteen Months, they take the common Name *Indagon*. It is the same, as to their good or bad Qualities: One Word expresses two or three of them.

And their
Qualities.

To speak of other Animals would be endless: For Example, that beloved Creature the Horse,

the *Tartars*, on Account of his Serviceableness, have multiplied Names in his Favour, to twenty Times more than the Dog. They have not only proper Names for his different Colours, Age, and Qualities, but also for his different Motions: As if he be restless, when tied: If he breaks loose, and runs at large: If he starts at the Fall of his Rider, or the sudden Encounter of a wild Beast: If he be mounted, for all his Paces, and the different Jogs he gives his Rider^b. Whether such a Copiousness be an Ornament, or a Clog^c to a Language, is not easy to determine: But whence could they get that astonishing Multitude of Names, and Terms, to express their Meaning? Not from their Neighbours. On the West are the *Mongol Tartars*: But in the two Languages there are hardly eight Words alike, and even those uncertain, as to their Origin. Eastward, as far as the Sea, lie some small Nations of Savages; but they understand nothing of their Language, nor of those Northward. On the South they have the *Koreans*; whose Language and Letters, being *Chinese*, have no Resemblance to the *Tartarian*.

1720.
Parennin.

THEY have only one Sort of Character^d, but Their Characters, and four Ways of Writing. First, when they write with Care, in Characters like those engraven on Stone, or Wood, twenty, or twenty-five Lines, is a Day's Work, especially when the Emperor is to see them. If the Stroke of the Pencil, from a heavy Hand, be too wide, or full; if not clean, through Defect in the Paper; if the Words are crowded, or uneven; in these, and the like Cases, they must begin anew. No References, nor marginal Additions, are allowed: That would be Want of Deference for their Prince; wherefore, the Inspectors of the Work reject every Sheet where they spy but one of those Faults. The second Form is very pretty, and little different from the first, though much easier. It is not necessary to draw the Finals of every Word with double Strokes, nor re-touch what is done, though a Stroke be too slender, or too thick.

THE third Way differs more from the second, than that from the first: It is their Running-Hand, quick in Motion, and soon fills both Sides of the Page. As the Pencil holds Ink better than our Pens, less Time is lost in dipping; and, when you dictate to the Writer, you see his Pencil run most nimbly on the Paper, and

^a Who would not be provoked at their *ce que ce que soit*? ^b In this it resembles the *Arabic*, which expresses the same Animal, or Thing, under different Ideas, by different Words: Thus they have a thousand Words for a Horse, Camel, &c. five hundred for Milk, a Sword, &c. ^c It must be a Clog, but then it is surely a great Ornament, as it renders the Language more concise, and expressive, as well as affords infinite Variety in the Sounds. ^d The *Tartar*, or *Manchew* Characters, are originally the *Oigur*, or *Vigur* Letters, which, with some Variation, are used by the *Mongols*, People of *Tibet*, and *Bengal*, as well as the *Manchews*.

Eastern
Tartary.

without a Moment's stopping. This Character is most used in Records, Proceedings at Law, and other ordinary Affairs. These three Ways differ in Fineness, but are equally legible. The fourth is the coarsest of all, though the shortest, and most convenient for an Author, or one who takes Minutes, or makes Extracts: For you must know, that in the *Tartar* Writing, there is always a Master-Stroke that falls perpendicularly from the Top of the Word to the Bottom. To the Left of this Stroke, they add, as it were, the Teeth of a Saw, which make the four Vowels, *a, e, i, o*, distinguished from one-another by Points on the Right of the Perpendicular. A Point opposite to the Tooth, is the Vowel *e*; if omitted, the Vowel *a*. A Point on the Left of a Word, near the Tooth, stands for *n*, and you must read *ne*: If there be an opposite Point on the Right, read *na*. Again, if at the Right of a Word, instead of a Point, you see an *o*, it denotes that the Vowel is aspirate, and should be read, *ha, he*, as in *Spanish*.

Pencil, and
Pen.

THEY commonly write with a Pencil, though some use a Kind of Pen, made of Bambú, and cut almost like those of *Europe*; wetting the Paper first with Alum-Water, to prevent the Ink from sinking. The *Tartar* Characters are of such a Nature, that they are as legible the wrong End upwards, as the other Way^a.

THERE is not a *Tartar* but prefers his Native Tongue to all others, and thinks it the most elegant and copious in the World. The Emperor's eldest Son, who was about thirty-five Years old, imagined there was no rendering the Sense of his Native Tongue, much less the Majesty of its Style, into any of the barbarous Languages; so he called the *European*. He was pleased with the handsome Binding of their Books, and elegant Engraving of the Figures; but the Letters quite disgusted him. He said, they were small, few, and ill-distinguished, and made a Sort of Chain with the Links a little twisted; or rather they resembled the Track of a Fly, on a varnished Table, covered with Dust. He could not think it possible, that such Characters were able to express so many Thoughts, and Actions; so many

European
Languages
confused,

a Things, dead and alive, like the *Tartarian* and *Chinese*, which were clear, and distinct, graceful, and numerous. In short, he alledged, that his Language was strong, majestic, and agreeable to the Ear; but, when the Missioners talked together, he heard nothing but a continual Chattering, much like the Jargon of *Fo-kyen*.

1720.
Parennin.

THAT the *European* Languages were capable of expressing the Sense of any Thing delivered in the *Tartarian*, Parennin convinced the Prince, by writing-down readily, in *Latin*, a Letter to *Suarez* the Jesuit (called *Su-lin* by the *Chinese*) which he dictated in his own Tongue. As to the *Roman* Characters, he affirmed, that they were to be preferred to the *Tartarian*; because, though fewer, they very well expressed many *Chinese*, *Tartarian*, and other Words, which his Nation knew not how to write in their Characters. For Instance, he proposed the Words *prendre, platine, griffon, friand*, which the Prince could not write, because the *Tartar* Language will not admit of joining two Consonants, but must have a Vowel betwixt them, making *perendre, pelatine, geriffon, feriant*. The Author farther observed, that he could begin no Word with the Letters *B* and *D*, but was forced to substitute *P* and *T*; for instead of *Bestia, Deus*, he wrote *Pestia, Teus*. Hence, as there was an Infinity of *European* Sounds, which he could not express in his Characters, though he might pronounce them, Parennin concluded, that the *French* Alphabet had the Advantage of the *Tartarian*^b.

HE farther objected, that the Vowel *e* was always open, and never pronounced mute, but at the End of some Word after *n*; nor were there any Marks to distinguish it. He granted the *Chinese* had the same Defect, and, that as the *Tartarian* has the Letter *r*, it had the Advantage so far in expressing foreign Names; but insisted, that the Language itself was not proper for a short and concise Style: That many Words were too long, therefore unfit for Poetry. He added, that there were but few Transitions in the *Tartarian*, and those very nice and difficult to hit: That the greatest Wits could not avoid this

Defects
found

^a Du Halde's *China*, p. 265, & seq. ^b I do not take the *French* Author's Conclusion to be right: For the *French* want the *ch, kh, w, j*, which the *Manchevs* have; and although they substitute Letters to express them, as *teb* for *ch*, *ou* for *w*; *dji*, *dgi* for *j*; yet, I believe, they can pronounce none of them: Whereas the Prince could pronounce the Sounds *e, i, b*, and *d*, if he could not write them. But could he not make Characters to express them, as well as the *French* have done; and, indeed, as the *Manchevs* have done themselves? since the *Oigur*, or *Vigur* Letters, which they use, were originally but fourteen. (See the History of the *Turks, Moguls*, &c. Translat. Pref. p. 22.) Whereas we find here, that the *Manchevs* have more Characters than the *French*: Possibly they may have as many as the Inhabitants of *Tibet*, who use the same Characters, with some Variation, and have thirty Consonants, and four Vowels. (Vid. *As. Erudit.* tom. 46, September 1722. p. 415, & seqg.) The *Manchev*, or *Tartar* Language, therefore, seems to be preferable, in this Respect, to the *French*, whose Alphabet is one of the worst in *Europe* to express the Oriental Sounds. See before, p. 196. Also the General History of the *Turks*, as above, p. 27.

Eastern
Tartary.

Rock, but sometimes would sit in Suspence how a to pass from one Phrase to another; and, after close thinking, were forced to obliterate what they had written; for which they give no other Reason than, That sounds ill, That is hard, That cannot be said, There must be another Connexion.

In the Tar-
tarian.

THE Prince could not deny this Inconvenience in his Language, but said, it did not affect Conversation, where Speech was fluent enough. *Parrennin*, in Reply to this, desired his Highness to observe, how they, who were not such Masters in the Tongue as himself, drawled-out the Finals, and added the insignificant Word *Yala*; valuing themselves much, if they repeated it but twice, or thrice, at a Conversation: That they who newly came from the Heart of the *Manchew* Country used it as frequently as the rest; which, he said, was a Proof that the *Tartar* Transitions are but scanty; and that because they dare not risque the Word *Yala* in Works of Elegance, especially since the Emperor had damned it by Disuse, Authors were sadly puzzled how to pass cleverly from one Subject to another.

Few Words
borrowed

THE Prince smiling, replied, it was no equal Match between them, in regard he had never been in *Europe*; but that had he made a Voyage thither, he should have returned stored with the Defects of the *French* Language, sufficient to have confounded him. *Parrennin* alledged, that could not be, since there was an Academy established purposely to reform and compleat his Language. But as the Jesuit, on being put the Question, could not deny that this Language had borrowed many Terms from other Nations, especially in Arts and Sciences, the Prince cried out, he had gotten the Advantage: *We, for our Parts*, said he, *have borrowed but very few Words from the Mongols, and fewer from the Chinese, which few we have naturalized by Terminations. You, forsooth, are enriched with the Spoils of your Neighbours: It becomes you, indeed, after all this, to cavil at the Tartar Language for Trifles.* However, the Answer of *Suarez* having satisfied him, he began to have a better Opinion of the *European* Languages, placing them next below his own. He had a Mind, indeed, to give the *Chinese* the second Place; but the Jesuit strongly protested against it, alledging the Multitude of Equivocals in that Tongue.

From other
Languages.

S E C T. II.

1682.

Verbieft.

A Journey into Eastern Tartary in 1682.

By Ferdinand Verbieft, Jesuit.

THIS Journey was performed in the Retinue of *Kang-hi*, late Emperor of *China*. *Verbieft*, who has been often mentioned before, was then President of the Tribunal of Mathematics at *Pe-king*. Some Time after, he sent an Account to *Europe*, in two Letters, of this Voyage, and another, which he performed the Year following, into *Western Tartary*. These have been translated (from the *Latin*, we presume) into several Languages, first into *French*, and from thence into *English*. It was printed at *London* in 1687, and added to *Soto's* Relation of *Florida*, in Octavo. *Du Halde* inserted it in his Description of *China*, and *Tartary*. The Work is short, but curious; and the only Piece of Travels extant performed expressly into the Heart of *Eastern Tartary*; for *Isbrand Ides*, and those who took the same Road from *Russia* to *China*, only passed through the Western Skirts of it.

The Emperor's Train. Verbieft, how employed. Nature of the Country. Towns all in Ruins. Enter Lyau-tong. The Tartar Manner of Hunting. Shin-yang City. A fine Road. The Order of the Emperor's March: Arrives at Kirin: Salutes the Place: Goes to Ula: News of Ninkrita. Fatiguing Journey: The Road spoiled. Particular Favours bestowed on Verbieft. The Emperor's Amusement: Return to Pe-king. Places and Distances, correspondent to the Map.

THE Emperor set-out, on his Progress into *Eastern Tartary*, the twenty-third of March, 1682, after suppressing a Rebellion by the Death of three Kings. One of these was strangled in the Province he had conquered; and another conveyed to *Pe-king*, with his chief Partisans, was there cut to Pieces, in open Court, by the *Mandarins*, in Revenge for the barbarous Murder of their Relations: The third, who was the Ringleader, had killed himself, to avoid Punishment; and so ended a seven Years War. That Monarch took with him his eldest Son, of ten Years, and was attended by the three first Queens, the chief Regulos, all the Court Grandees, and the most considerable *Mandarins* of all Orders, besides so numerous an Equipage, that he had, in his Retinue, more than seventy thousand Persons.

He was pleased that *Verbieft* should accompany him,

Eastern
Tartary.

and about fifty Minutes^a, which City was almost a Quarter - Masters setting-forward early every Morning, followed by the necessary Baggage, marked-out Places for the Tents of the Emperor, Queens, Grandees, and *Mandarins*, according to their Quality. Some *Koreans* having presented the Emperor with a Sea-Calf, he asked *Verbieft*, whether *European* Authors mentioned that Fish. On being told, there was a Book in the Jesuits Library at *Pe-king*, which treated of its Nature, and had a Cut of it, he longed to see it, and immediately dispatched a Courier, who brought it in a few Days. His Majesty was much pleased to find the Description agree with what he saw, and ordered the Fish to be kept as a Rarity.

A fine Road. FROM *Pe-king* to this Place, near eleven hundred Miles, a new Road was made, commodious for the Emperor to ride on Horseback, and the Queens in their gilt Chariots. It is about ten Foot broad, and as strait and even as they could possibly make it. On the Sides run a Sort of little Causeways, a Foot high, exactly even, and parallel. The Road itself, especially in fine Weather, is as clean as a Threshing-Floor, Men being appointed for that Purpose. Another such Road is made to return by. They have done their best to level Mountains; they have built Bridges over Torrents, and lined the Sides with Mats, painted with Animals; which have the same Effect as the Tapestry, with which the Streets are hung in Time of Processions.

The Order of THE Emperor seldom travelled along this Road, hunting almost continually; and, whenever he came-up with the Queens, rode by the Side of it, lest the great Number of Horses, in his Train, should spoil it. He commonly marched at the Head of this Kind of Army: Next, at some Distance, followed the Queens, with their Attendants, and Equipage: Then the Regulos, Grandees of the Court, and *Mandarins*, according to their Dignities: A vast Number of Servants, and other People on Horseback, brought-up the Rear.

As there was no City on the Road capable of lodging, or subsisting, such a Multitude, and great Part of the Way lay through a Country but thinly inhabited, they were obliged to carry with them all Sorts of Necessaries, and Provisions, for three Months; wherefore a prodigious Number of Waggon, Camels, Horses, and Mules, with the Baggage, were first sent-away by By-Roads. Besides, his Majesty, and almost all the Nobility, had great Numbers of Led-Horses, for Change on Occasion; to say nothing of the Drovers of Oxen, Sheep, &c. So that though the Road for this vast Multitude of Men, Horses, and Herds, lay pretty far-off the Highway, yet they raised such a horrible Dust, that those in the Emperor's Train could hardly distinguish fifteen or twenty Paces before them.

The Emperor's March. THEIR March was so well-regulated, that they encamped, every Evening, on the Bank of

some River, or Torrent: For which End the Quarter - Masters setting-forward early every Morning, followed by the necessary Baggage, marked-out Places for the Tents of the Emperor, Queens, Grandees, and *Mandarins*, according to their Quality. Some *Koreans* having presented the Emperor with a Sea-Calf, he asked *Verbieft*, whether *European* Authors mentioned that Fish. On being told, there was a Book in the Jesuits Library at *Pe-king*, which treated of its Nature, and had a Cut of it, he longed to see it, and immediately dispatched a Courier, who brought it in a few Days. His Majesty was much pleased to find the Description agree with what he saw, and ordered the Fish to be kept as a Rarity.

WHILE they staid at *Shin-yang*, which was four Days, the Emperor, with the Queens, went to visit the Tombs of his Ancestors, not far-off; from whence he sent-back the Ladies to that City, in order to continue his Journey for *Eastern Tartary*. After a Hunting-March of some Days, they reached *Kirin*, four hundred Miles from *Shin-yang*. This City stands upon the great River *Songari*, which rises in the *Shan-pé*, or *White Mountain*, four hundred Miles distant Southward. This Mountain, so famous in the East, for having been the ancient Habitation of the *Manchew Tartars*, is said to be always covered with Snow, whence it takes its Name.

As soon as the Emperor came in Sight of the Place, he alighted from his Horse; and kneeling on the Bank of the River, bowed thrice to the Ground, by Way of Salutation: He then mounted a Throne glittering with Gold, on which he made his Entrance into the City; all the People, running in Crouds to meet him, and weeping for Joy to see him. These Marks of Affection were highly acceptable to their Prince, who, in Token of his Favour, condescended to shew himself to every-body, forbidding his Guards to hinder his People from approaching him, as they do at *Pe-king*. They have a particular Sort of Bark in this City: The Inhabitants keep a great Number of them in Readiness, to repulse the *Russians*, who often come-upon the River to dispute their Pearl-Fishery.

THE Emperor rested here two Days, and then went-down the River with some of his Nobles, attended by above an hundred Boats, as far

^a In *Verbieft's* Letters, printed at *Paris* 1695, the Latitude is forty-four Degrees twenty Minutes: But the Latitude in the Text is very near that of *Kirin-ula botun*, and that of *Ula* assigned by *Du Halde*; who, it is likely, took these two Places for the same: Whereas, *Ula* appears, in this Journal, to be thirty-two Miles North of *Kirin-ula*, and is, doubtless, the same with *Putay-ula-botun*, on the *Songari*, in about forty-four Degrees six Minutes. ^b Before, p. 356, written *Chang-pé-shan*, which, doubtless, is the true Name, there said to be taken from the Whiteness of its Sand. ^c *Du Halde's China*, vol. 2. p. 268, & seq.

Western Tartary. as *Ula*^a, twenty-three Miles distant, the finest City in all the Country, and formerly the Seat of the *Tartar* Empire. One chief End of this small Voyage, was to take the Diversion of catching Fish, pretty-like our Plaice, of which the River is full a little below *Ula*. But the Rains coming on-a-sudden, so swelled the Stream, that all the Nets were broken, and carried-away by the Flood: So that after waiting five or six Days, he was forced to return to *Kirin*, without that Sport. In the Way, the Bark in which *Verbieft* went with the Emperor's Father-in-law, was so damaged, by the Beating of the Waves, that they were forced to land, and get into a Cart drawn by an Ox.

News of Ninkrita. THE Author learned, from the Inhabitants of *Ula*, that *Ninkrita*^b, a Place pretty famous in those Parts, is distant from thence seven hundred *Chinese*^c Furlongs, of three hundred and sixty geometrical Paces each. He was likewise informed, by the General of the Militia at *Kirin*, that setting-out from *Ninkrita* on the great River *He-long*^d, into which the *Songaro*, and other more considerable Rivers fall, and sailing-down the Stream, which runs to the North-East, he arrived, in forty Days, at the Eastern Sea, which, in the Writer's Opinion, is the *Streights of An-nian*.

Fatiguing Journey. Two Days after, the Rains beginning to abate, they left *Kirin*, in order to return the same Way they came. The Fatigues of this Journey were inexpressible, the Roads being spoiled, and almost rendered impracticable by the Waters. They marched, without resting, over Mountains and Valleys; passing most dangerous Rivers, and Torrents, where the Bridges were broken with the Current, or covered with the Flood. In some Places, they met with deep Pools, and Sloughs, which they had the greatest Difficulty to get-out-of. The Beasts that carried the Baggage, could not move-forward, but remained sticking in the Mud, or died for Faintness on the Road. Men fared no better, and all went to wreck for want of Provisions, and necessary Refreshments, for so long a Journey. Many were forced to alight, and pull-along their Horses, who were quite spent; or stop in the Middle of the Plains, to give them Breath.

THOUGH the Quarter-Masters, and Harbin-gers, wanted no Pioneers, nor Wood for Fascines, to mend the bad Places; yet after the Van-Guard of Horses, and Waggons, which set-out very early, was once passed, it was impossible to follow them. The Emperor himself, his Son, and all the great Lords of the Court, more than once were glad to cross the Bogs and Marshes on-Foot, fearing to run a greater Risk on Horseback. When they came to Bridges, or such Sort of Passes, the whole Body halted: Then, as soon as the Emperor, and some of the great Men were over, the Multitude crowded after; and each striving to get foremost, many were thrown-down in the Water: Others fetching a Compass still more dangerous, got-into Sloughs and Quagmires, where they stuck: In short, they underwent such Hardships in all the Roads of *Eastern Tartary*, that the old Officers, who had followed the Court above thirty Years, said they never suffered so much before in any Journey.

ON these Occasions, the Emperor testified a particular Regard for *Verbieft*. The first Day they set-out on their Return, they were stopped, in the Evening, by a large and rapid Torrent. The Emperor having found, by Chance, a small Boat, which could not carry above four, first passed with his Son; some of the chief Regulos followed. All the other Princes, Lords, and Mandarins, with the rest of the Army, waited, with Impatience, for the Boat's Return, because Night came-on, and the Tents were passed long before: But the Emperor coming-back in just such another, called-out aloud for *Verbieft* to his Father-in-law, saying, *Let him come in, and pass-over with us*: So that only they two passed with his Majesty, the rest tarrying on the Bank all Night in the open Air.

THE like happened next Day, almost in the same Manner: The Emperor coming, about Noon, to the Side of such another Torrent, gave Orders to spend the Day, till Evening, in passing-over the Tents, Bales, and Baggage; and then was pleased, that of all his Court, the Author only should cross with him, leaving the great Lords to pass the Night on the other Side: Nay, his Father-in-law asking, whether he might accompany the Missioner, because he lodged in his

^a This must be *Putay-ula*, placed in the Map a little to the West of the North, but cannot be *Ulugh-surt*, the Seat of *Jenghiz Khan*, as the *English* Translator of *Abulglazi Khan's* History, before-mentioned, thinks, vol. 2. p. 513. For it was not far from *Kara-koram*, or *Kara-kuran*, as *De la Croix* observes in his History of that grand Monarch, p. 397. Then the small Similitude between *Ula* and *Ulugh* (on which that Conjecture seems to have been grounded) is of small Use, since the Words have very different Meanings; *Ula*, in the *Manchew* Language, signifying a River, and *Ulugh*, great, in the *Mongul* Tongue. ^b Perhaps the same as *Ninguta*, or *Ningunta*, before-mentioned, p. 351. ^c That is, seventy Leagues, reckoning ten Furlongs to a League, as hath been often mentioned before. ^d In the Original, *He-lun*, according to the *Portuguese* Orthography; that is, the *He-long-kyang*, or *Saghalian-ula*: But it must be observed, that *Ninkrita*, or *Ninguta*, stands on the *Hurba*, which falls into the *Songaro*, at a great Distance to the South of the *He-long*.

Eastern
Tartary.

Tent, was answered, that he might tarry, for a while, *himself would take-care, that he should be furnished with Necessaries.* 1632.
Verbieft.

The Empe-
ror's Amuse-
ment.

WHEN they were gotten over, the Emperor seated himself on the Bank, and placed the Jesuit by his Side, with the two Sons of Western Regulos, and the chief *Ko-lau* of *Tartary*, whom he distinguished on all Occasions. It being a fine Night, and a clear Sky, he was pleased that *Verbieft* should name the Constellations, that then appeared, in the *Chinese* and *European* Languages, himself naming first those which he knew. Then opening a little Map, which the Author had presented him some Years before, he sought the Hour of Night by the Star on the Meridian, delighting to let every-one see his Skill in the Sciences. To these, and other Tokens of his Goodwill, his Majesty added, that of sending him Meat from his own Table.

Return to
Pe-king.

THE Author arrived at *Pe-king* the ninth of *June*, very late, in perfect Health; though many remained sick on the Road, or came home hurt, and lame ^a.

Places and
Distances

HERE follow the *Tartarian* Names and Distances of the several Places through which they passed in *Eastern Tartary*, from the Capital of *Lyau-tong*, to *Kirin*. The first Day, departing from *Shin-yang*, they came to *Syau-lifo*, as the *Chinese* call the Place, ninety-five *Li*, or *Chinese* Furlongs ^b. The second Day, to *Chakay-angha*, (a Brook) eighty-five *Li*. The third, to another Brook of the same Name, seventy *Li*. The fourth, to *Kiaguchen*, fifty *Li*. The fifth, to *Feyteri*, eighty *Li*. The sixth, to the Torrent *Seyperi*, sixty *Li*. The seventh, to the Brook of *Tsiang*, sixty *Li*. The eighth, to *Kürü* ^c, fifty *Li*. The ninth, to the Town of *Sapé*, forty *Li*. The tenth, to *Quaranni-pira*, forty *Li*. The eleventh, to *Elten-eme-ambayaga*, seventy *Li*. The twelfth, to *Ipatan*, fifty-eight *Li*. The thirteenth, to *Swayen-ni-pira*, sixty *Li*. The fourteenth to *Ilmen*, seventy *Li*. The fifteenth, to *Sewten*, seventy *Li*. The sixteenth, to the City of *Kirin*, seventy *Li*. The whole Road contains one thousand and twenty-eight *Chinese* Furlongs, which make three hundred and sixty-nine geometrical Miles; and might be inserted in *Martini's* Map of *Lyau-tong*, only correcting the Latitudes, according to the Observations inserted in the Journal.

Correspondent
to the Map.

THIS Road cannot be traced in the first Sheet of the Map of *Tartary*, given by *Du Halde*, till

you come to the River *Kürü*, which lies Half-way. But from thence you meet with all the Places mentioned in the Itinerary, except the Town of *Sapé*, and *Quaranni*, or *Karanni-pira*, which, perhaps, is the same with the *Ajigbe-yaba* River. The other Places are named in the Map *Altan-eme-amba-yaba*, *Iptan*, *Sayan*, *Ilmen*, *Sewde* (for *Sewten*) *Kirin-ula-hotun* ^d.

A TABLE ^e of Places in *Eastern Tartary*, whose Latitudes have been determined by Observation, and Longitudes, geometrically, by the Missioners.

	Latitude.			Longitude.		
	°	'	"	°	'	"
<i>Panse-hotun</i>	41	29	0	9	6	40
<i>Kirin-ula-hotun</i>	43	46	48	10	24	30
<i>Tondonkhia-mon</i>	43	57	36	11	26	00
<i>Ninguta-hotun</i>	44	24	15	13	1	60
<i>Hüchi-pira</i> , Source of,	43	31	0	13	15	00
<i>Hongta-hotun</i>	42	54	1	13	86	00
<i>Chülhey-hotun</i>	43	20	10	15	82	00
<i>Chülhey-hotun</i> , of <i>Swi-</i>	44	1	12	15	36	30
<i>fon-pira</i>						
<i>Tapkü-hurta</i> , South-	44	47	10	18	00	00
<i>Side</i>						
<i>Chülghay-hotun</i> , on	44	33	00	16	34	00
<i>the Ufuri-pira</i>						
<i>Niman-kajan</i>	46	55	20	19	58	40
<i>Hoy-chü-kajan</i>	47	59	00	18	45	00
<i>Hüla-kajan</i>	48	50	00	19	3	20
<i>Tondon-kajan</i>	49	24	20	19	58	40
<i>Edü-kajan</i>	48	9	36	15	37	00
<i>Chest-kajan</i>	47	49	12	16	11	20
<i>Indamü-kajan</i>	47	23	00	15	27	30
<i>Nülshan-kajan</i>	47	18	45	14	40	40
<i>Petünez-hotun</i>	46	53	20	14	12	50
<i>Porato-kajan</i>	45	47	45	9	52	00
<i>Hara-payshang</i>	45	15	40	8	32	20
<i>Kojin-po-kiamon</i>	43	48	00	5	50	00
<i>Sülay-po</i>	42	18	00	4	3	00
<i>Sirani-jüsay-po</i>	41	4	15	2	46	40
<i>Parin</i>	41	50	30	1	25	00
<i>Chakka-hotun</i>	42	15	36	1	58	20
<i>Porato-kiamon</i>	41	16	48	00	30	00
<i>Poro-hotun</i>	44	1	30	2	57	30
<i>Tsitfikar</i> ^f	47	24	00	7	27	20
<i>Kamnika-kiamon</i>	48	41	30	8	27	20
<i>Mergben-hotun</i>	49	12	00	8	33	50
<i>Saghalian-ula-hotun</i>	50	00	55	10	59	00
<i>Ulüffü-mundan</i>	51	21	36	10	23	00

^a Here *Du Halde* breaks-off, omitting what follows in the Journal, which is added by the Translator. ^b Which make nine Leagues and an half. ^c *Kürü-pira*, or River *Kürü*. ^d *Du Halde's China*, p. 270. ^e This Table, as well as all the Tables of Latitude and Longitude, relating to *China* and *Tartary*, is inserted at the End of the last Volume of *Du Halde's China*, but is distributed, by the *English* Translator, into their respective Maps, to serve as Vouchers for their Accuracy. ^f In the Original, *Cbifkar*.